

# Latin

Wikibooks.org

March 15, 2013

On the 28th of April 2012 the contents of the English as well as German Wikibooks and Wikipedia projects were licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported license. An URI to this license is given in the list of figures on page 287. If this document is a derived work from the contents of one of these projects and the content was still licensed by the project under this license at the time of derivation this document has to be licensed under the same, a similar or a compatible license, as stated in section 4b of the license. The list of contributors is included in chapter Contributors on page 281. The licenses GPL, LGPL and GFDL are included in chapter Licenses on page 291, since this book and/or parts of it may or may not be licensed under one or more of these licenses, and thus require inclusion of these licenses. The licenses of the figures are given in the list of figures on page 287. This PDF was generated by the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X typesetting software. The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X source code is included as an attachment (`source.7z.txt`) in this PDF file. To extract the source from the PDF file, we recommend the use of <http://www.pdflabs.com/tools/pdftk-the-pdf-toolkit/> utility or clicking the paper clip attachment symbol on the lower left of your PDF Viewer, selecting **Save Attachment**. After extracting it from the PDF file you have to rename it to `source.7z`. To uncompress the resulting archive we recommend the use of <http://www.7-zip.org/>. The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X source itself was generated by a program written by Dirk Hünninger, which is freely available under an open source license from [http://de.wikibooks.org/wiki/Benutzer:Dirk\\_Huenniger/wb2pdf](http://de.wikibooks.org/wiki/Benutzer:Dirk_Huenniger/wb2pdf). This distribution also contains a configured version of the `pdflatex` compiler with all necessary packages and fonts needed to compile the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X source included in this PDF file.

# Contents

|          |   |           |
|----------|---|-----------|
| 0.1      | A Progressive Latin Grammar and Exercises . . . . .                                   | 1         |
| <b>1</b> | <b>How to study a language on the Internet and in your head</b>                       | <b>3</b>  |
| 1.1      | So do not assume that... . . . . .  | 3         |
| 1.2      | See also . . . . .  | 3         |
| <b>2</b> | <b>Special consideration: How to use a Wikibook when progress may mean inaccuracy</b> | <b>5</b>  |
| <b>3</b> | <b>Grammatical Introduction to Latin</b>  | <b>7</b>  |
| <b>4</b> | <b>What is Latin?</b>   | <b>9</b>  |
| <b>5</b> | <b>Introduction to the Latin Language</b>   | <b>11</b> |
| 5.1      | Simple and Compound Words . . . . .   | 11        |
| 5.2      | Word Parts . . . . .  | 11        |
| <b>6</b> | <b>Types of Words used in Latin</b>   | <b>13</b> |
| 6.1      | Nouns . . . . .   | 13        |
| 6.2      | Verbs . . . . .   | 13        |
| 6.3      | Modifiers . . . . .   | 14        |
| 6.4      | Other . . . . .   | 14        |
| 6.5      | Articles . . . . .  | 14        |
| <b>7</b> | <b>Summary</b>  | <b>15</b> |
| 7.1      | Pronunciation . . . . .   | 15        |
| 7.2      | Declension Tables . . . . .   | 16        |
| 7.3      | Grammar Part 1: Nouns and Their Role in Sentences . . . . .                           | 20        |
| 7.4      | Adjectives . . . . .  | 23        |
| 7.5      | Recapitulation . . . . .  | 23        |
| 7.6      | Exercises . . . . .   | 24        |
| 7.7      | Chapter 1: Basic Sentences . . . . .  | 25        |
| <b>8</b> | <b>The Nominative Case</b>  | <b>27</b> |
| 8.1      | The Nominative Case . . . . .   | 27        |
| 8.2      | Notes on Vocabulary . . . . .   | 27        |
| 8.3      | Overview of Adjectives . . . . .  | 28        |
| 8.4      | Adjectives in Latin . . . . .   | 29        |
| 8.5      | Grammar: Pluralizing Nominatives . . . . .  | 30        |
| 8.6      | Basic verbs . . . . .   | 30        |
| 8.7      | Further Examples . . . . .  | 31        |
| 8.8      | Third Declension Nouns and Adjectives . . . . .                                       | 32        |

|           |  |           |
|-----------|--|-----------|
| 8.9       | Exercises . . . . .  | 33        |
| <b>9</b>  | <b>Present indicative active construct</b>   | <b>35</b> |
| <b>10</b> | <b>Grammatical Introduction to Verbs</b>   | <b>37</b> |
| 10.1      | Examples . . . . .   | 38        |
| 10.2      | Personal Endings . . . . .   | 38        |
| 10.3      | Moods . . . . .  | 39        |
| 10.4      | Voice . . . . .  | 40        |
| 10.5      | Tense . . . . .  | 40        |
| 10.6      | Infinitive . . . . .   | 42        |
| 10.7      | Irregularities . . . . .   | 43        |
| 10.8      | Personal Pronouns . . . . .  | 43        |
| 10.9      | Principal Parts . . . . .  | 44        |
| 10.10     | Using the Dictionary . . . . .   | 45        |
| <b>11</b> | <b>Verbs: Conjugation in the Present Imperfect</b>   | <b>47</b> |
| 11.1      | Imperative Mood . . . . .  | 50        |
| <b>12</b> | <b>Adverbs &amp; Prepositions</b>  | <b>53</b> |
| 12.1      | Comparatives and Superlatives of Adjectives (Comparativa et superlativa<br>adjectivorum) . . . . . | 53        |
| 12.2      | Adverbs . . . . .  | 54        |
| 12.3      | Conjunctions . . . . .   | 55        |
| 12.4      | Prepositions . . . . .   | 56        |
| 12.5      | List of Frequent Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions in Latin . . . .                          | 58        |
| <b>13</b> | <b>The Accusative Case</b>   | <b>63</b> |
| 13.1      | Exercises . . . . .  | 63        |
| 13.2      | Grammar: The Accusative . . . . .  | 64        |
| 13.3      | Examples of Adjectives Agreeing with the Nominative and Accusative Case                            | 65        |
| 13.4      | Exercise 3 . . . . .   | 73        |
| 13.5      | Grammar: The Use of the Accusative . . . . .   | 73        |
| 13.6      | Grammatical Explanation Using English Sentences . . . . .  | 74        |
| <b>14</b> | <b>Pronouns</b>  | <b>77</b> |
| 14.1      | Personal Pronouns in English . . . . .   | 77        |
| 14.2      | Personal Pronouns in Latin . . . . .   | 77        |
| 14.3      | Exercises . . . . .  | 89        |
| <b>15</b> | <b>Chapter 1 Verse</b>   | <b>91</b> |
| <b>16</b> | <b>Latin I prose</b>   | <b>93</b> |
| 16.1      | Chapter 2: Complicated Sentences . . . . .   | 94        |
| <b>17</b> | <b>The Imperfect Tense</b>   | <b>95</b> |
| 17.1      | Imperfect Active Indicative . . . . .  | 95        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>18 The Genitive and Dative Cases</b>  | <b>99</b>  |
| 18.1 Noun Tables . . . . .   | 99         |
| 18.2 The Genitive . . . . .  | 101        |
| 18.3 Agreeing with the Adjectives . . . . .  | 104        |
| 18.4 The Dative . . . . .  | 104        |
| 18.5 Exercise 2: Translate into English . . . . .  | 108        |
| 18.6 Roman Numerals . . . . .  | 108        |
| <b>19 The Future Tense</b>   | <b>111</b> |
| 19.1 Future I, Active . . . . .  | 111        |
| <b>20 The Ablative and Vocative Case</b>   | <b>115</b> |
| 20.1 The Ablative Case . . . . .   | 115        |
| 20.2 Grammar Part 5: The Power of the Ablative Case . . . . .                                  | 115        |
| 20.3 Ablative with prepositions . . . . .  | 117        |
| 20.4 The Vocative Case . . . . .   | 117        |
| <b>21 The 3rd, 4th and 5th declensions</b>   | <b>121</b> |
| 21.1 3rd, 4th, and 5th Declension Nouns . . . . .  | 121        |
| 21.2 4th Declension Masculine/Feminine (each word has a set gender) <i>gradus</i> , m. . . . . | 124        |
| 21.3 Exercises . . . . .   | 125        |
| <b>22 Irregular Verbs &amp; Revision</b>   | <b>127</b> |
| 22.1 Irregular Verbs . . . . .   | 127        |
| 22.2 Exercise 1 . . . . .  | 129        |
| 22.3 Exercise 2 . . . . .  | 129        |
| <b>23 Translation Exercise</b>   | <b>133</b> |
| 23.1 Using a Dictionary . . . . .  | 133        |
| 23.2 Exercise 1 . . . . .  | 133        |
| <b>24 Imperfect and Future indicative active constructs</b>                                    | <b>135</b> |
| 24.1 Imperfect Active Indicative . . . . .   | 135        |
| 24.2 Future I, Active . . . . .  | 136        |
| 24.3 Future conjugation . . . . .  | 138        |
| <b>25 Chapter 2 Verse</b>  | <b>139</b> |
| 25.1 Using a Dictionary . . . . .  | 139        |
| 25.2 Exercise 1 . . . . .  | 139        |
| 25.3 Chapter 3: Advanced Sentences . . . . .   | 140        |
| <b>26 Imperatives</b>  | <b>141</b> |
| <b>27 Imperative</b>   | <b>143</b> |
| 27.1 Positive Imperative . . . . .   | 143        |
| 27.2 Negative Imperative . . . . .   | 144        |
| <b>28 Active v. Passive Verbs</b>  | <b>147</b> |
| 28.1 Examples: . . . . .   | 147        |

|           |  |            |
|-----------|--|------------|
| 28.2      | Deponent verbs . . . . .   | 148        |
| <b>29</b> | <b>Indicative Passive Verbs</b>                                  | <b>149</b> |
| <b>30</b> | <b>Principal Parts</b>   | <b>155</b> |
| 30.1      | Principal Parts . . . . .  | 155        |
| <b>31</b> | <b>The Perfect Indicative Tense</b>                              | <b>157</b> |
| 31.1      | Latin Perfect Active Tense . . . . .                             | 157        |
| 31.2      | Rules for Finding the Perfect Stem . . . . .                     | 158        |
| <b>32</b> | <b>The Perfect Indicative Passive Verbs</b>                      | <b>161</b> |
| 32.1      | Forming the Perfect Passive in Latin . . . . .                   | 161        |
| 32.2      | Conjugation of Verbs in the Perfect Passive . . . . .            | 161        |
| 32.3      | Examples . . . . .   | 162        |
| 32.4      | Exercises . . . . .  | 163        |
| <b>33</b> | <b>Future and Past Perfect Indicative Tenses</b>                 | <b>165</b> |
| 33.1      | Future perfect . . . . .   | 165        |
| 33.2      | Pluperfect . . . . .   | 165        |
| 33.3      | Examples . . . . .   | 166        |
| <b>34</b> | <b>Ablative Absolute and Accusative Infinitive Constructions</b> | <b>167</b> |
| 34.1      | Ablative Absolute . . . . .                                      | 167        |
| 34.2      | Accusative Infinitive . . . . .                                  | 167        |
| <b>35</b> | <b>Chapter 3 Verse</b>   | <b>171</b> |
| 35.1      | Chapter 4: The Subjunctive Mood and Complex Sentences . . . . .  | 171        |
| <b>36</b> | <b>The Subjunctive Mood</b>                                      | <b>173</b> |
| 36.1      | Subjunctives . . . . .   | 173        |
| 36.2      | Uses of the Subjunctive . . . . .                                | 175        |
| <b>37</b> | <b>The Uses of the Subjunctive</b>                               | <b>177</b> |
| 37.1      | First Person Exhortations (Hortatory Subjunctive) . . . . .      | 177        |
| 37.2      | Purpose Clauses . . . . .  | 178        |
| 37.3      | Result Clauses . . . . .   | 178        |
| 37.4      | Indirect Commands . . . . .                                      | 179        |
| 37.5      | Indirect questions . . . . .                                     | 179        |
| 37.6      | Notā bene! . . . . .   | 179        |
| <b>38</b> | <b>The Subjunctive Imperfect</b>                                 | <b>181</b> |
| 38.1      | Application . . . . .  | 181        |
| <b>39</b> | <b>The Subjunctive Passive Verbs</b>                             | <b>183</b> |
| 39.1      | Passive Subjunctive System . . . . .                             | 183        |
| <b>40</b> | <b>The Subjunctive Perfects</b>                                  | <b>185</b> |
| <b>41</b> | <b>The Subjunctive Perfect Passive Verbs</b>                     | <b>187</b> |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>42 Subjunctive Passive Verbs</b>                              | <b>189</b> |
| 42.1 Subjunctive Passive Perfect . . . . .                       | 189        |
| 42.2 Subjunctive Passive Pluperfect . . . . .                    | 190        |
| <b>43 The Gerund and Participles</b>                             | <b>191</b> |
| <b>44 Participles</b>  | <b>193</b> |
| 44.1 Present Active Participles . . . . .                        | 193        |
| 44.2 Gerund . . . . .  | 194        |
| 44.3 Gerundive . . . . .   | 196        |
| <b>45 Exercises</b>  | <b>197</b> |
| <b>46 Conditional Clauses</b>                                    | <b>199</b> |
| 46.1 Conditional Clauses . . . . .                               | 199        |
| <b>47 Revision</b>   | <b>203</b> |
| <b>48 Idioms</b>   | <b>205</b> |
| <b>49 Translation</b>  | <b>207</b> |
| <b>50 Chapter 4 Verse</b>  | <b>209</b> |
| <b>51 Verse from the Gospels</b>                                 | <b>211</b> |
| 51.1 A Verse From the Gospel of St. Luke . . . . .               | 211        |
| 51.2 Chapter 5: Review . . . . .                                 | 211        |
| <b>52 Revision</b>   | <b>213</b> |
| <b>53 What is Latin?</b>   | <b>215</b> |
| <b>54 Introduction to the Latin Language</b>                     | <b>217</b> |
| 54.1 Simple and Compound Words . . . . .                         | 217        |
| 54.2 Word Parts . . . . .  | 217        |
| <b>55 Types of Words used in Latin</b>                           | <b>219</b> |
| 55.1 Nouns . . . . .   | 219        |
| 55.2 Verbs . . . . .   | 219        |
| 55.3 Modifiers . . . . .   | 220        |
| 55.4 Other . . . . .   | 220        |
| 55.5 Articles . . . . .  | 220        |
| <b>56 Summary</b>  | <b>221</b> |
| 56.1 Pronunciation . . . . .                                     | 221        |
| 56.2 Declension Tables . . . . .                                 | 222        |
| 56.3 Grammar Part 1: Nouns and Their Role in Sentences . . . . . | 226        |
| 56.4 Adjectives . . . . .  | 229        |
| 56.5 Recapitulation . . . . .                                    | 229        |
| 56.6 Exercises . . . . .   | 230        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>57 Exercises</b>  | <b>233</b> |
| 57.1 Exercises . . . . .   | 233        |
| 57.2 Grammar: The Accusative . . . . .                                       | 234        |
| 57.3 Examples of Adjectives Agreeing with the Nominative and Accusative Case | 235        |
| 57.4 Exercise 3 . . . . .  | 243        |
| 57.5 Grammar: The Use of the Accusative . . . . .                            | 243        |
| 57.6 Grammatical Explanation Using English Sentences . . . . .               | 244        |
| <b>58 Exercises</b>  | <b>247</b> |
| 58.1 Noun Tables . . . . .   | 247        |
| 58.2 The Genitive . . . . .  | 249        |
| 58.3 Agreeing with the Adjectives . . . . .                                  | 252        |
| 58.4 The Dative . . . . .  | 252        |
| 58.5 Exercise 2: Translate into English . . . . .                            | 256        |
| 58.6 Roman Numerals . . . . .  | 256        |
| <b>59 Translation</b>  | <b>259</b> |
| 59.1 The Ablative Case . . . . .   | 259        |
| 59.2 Grammar Part 5: The Power of the Ablative Case . . . . .                | 259        |
| 59.3 Ablative with prepositions . . . . .                                    | 261        |
| 59.4 The Vocative Case . . . . .   | 261        |
| <b>60 Revision</b>   | <b>265</b> |
| 60.1 Personal Pronouns in English . . . . .                                  | 265        |
| 60.2 Personal Pronouns in Latin . . . . .                                    | 265        |
| 60.3 Exercises . . . . .   | 277        |
| <b>61 Poem about Latin</b>   | <b>279</b> |
| <b>62 Contributors</b>   | <b>281</b> |
| <b>List of Figures</b>   | <b>287</b> |
| <b>63 Licenses</b>   | <b>291</b> |
| 63.1 GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE . . . . .                                    | 291        |
| 63.2 GNU Free Documentation License . . . . .                                | 292        |
| 63.3 GNU Lesser General Public License . . . . .                             | 293        |

## 0.1 A Progressive Latin Grammar and Exercises

Introduction to the origins and structure of Latin:





# 1 How to study a language on the Internet and in your head

How do you think about languages as you study them? Typically, you will consider every punctuation mark and letter, all the verbs and nouns, adverbs and adjectives, and study them in order to make connections. Ideally, you will have a teacher to point you in the right direction, and help you make those connections. But when you have no teacher, these connections are left for you to discover. They may be clear or hidden, but either way you will have to make them yourself. As you explore this Wikibook, it will require the skill of critical thinking.

You can never go wrong studying a language if you remember that exposing yourself to a language, even if you stumble in practice, is itself learning it. Looking things up too much can sometimes impede progress. Stretch your memory, read slowly, and re-read. As you will soon discover, you are about to study a language that is rich and full of meaning, an ancestor of many modern languages spoken around the world, including romance languages, like Spanish, French, Italian, Romanian, and even English.

## 1.1 So do not assume that...

...Latin is like any other language. Do not assume ancient Roman culture is like other cultures, however, the Romans grappled with issues that are universally dealt with.

We, the authors, endorse memorization, and after that, immersion. You must develop Latin muscles, and a willingness to write or type things out, or drill using software, or with a friend. Note the patterns after you have memorized the forms, not before. Allow yourself to be mesmerized by them. Similarly, seek out explanation only after you have memorized forms. Memorize forms, then make sentences, then use your knowledge to speak the language.

## 1.2 See also

- How to learn a language<sup>1</sup>

Category:Latin<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/How%20to%20learn%20a%20language>

<sup>2</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>



## 2 Special consideration: How to use a Wikibook when progress may mean inaccuracy

The current rules for dealing with inaccuracy in this book is to simply delete what you don't understand and to note your level of schooling and your country of origin and that you were confused in the summary box. Try to use the "revert?" keyword.

In other words, do not tolerate inaccuracy!

Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>



### 3 Grammatical Introduction to Latin



## 4 What is Latin?

*Parts of this introduction were taken from The Latin Language<sup>1</sup> on the Wikipedia<sup>2</sup>.*

Latin was the language originally spoken in the region around the city of Rome called Latium. It gained great importance as the formal language of the Roman Empire.

All Romance languages descend from a Latin parent, and many words in English<sup>3</sup> and other languages today are based on Latin roots. Moreover, Latin was a *lingua franca*, the learned language for scientific and political affairs in Europe, for more than one and a half thousand years, being eventually replaced by French<sup>4</sup> in the 18th century and English by the middle of the 20th. Latin remains the formal language of the Roman Catholic Church to this day, and as such is the official national language of the Vatican.

Romance languages are not derived from Classical Latin, the language spoken by Caesar and Cicero, but rather from Vulgar Latin, the language spoken by the common people, or *vulgus*, of Rome. Classical Latin and Vulgar Latin (Romance) differ (for example) in that Romance had distinctive stress whereas Classical had distinctive length of vowels. In Italian<sup>5</sup> and Sardo logudorese, there is distinctive length of consonants and stress, in Spanish<sup>6</sup> only distinctive stress, and in French even stress is no longer distinctive.

Another major distinction between Classical and Romance is that modern Romance languages, excluding Romanian<sup>7</sup>, have lost their case endings (suffixes at the end of the word used in place of prepositions) in most words (some pronouns being exceptions). Romanian is still equipped with several cases (though some, notably the ablative, are no longer represented).

It is also important to note that Latin is, for the most part, an inflected language — meaning that the endings change to show how the word is being used in the sentence.

---

1 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Latin>  
2 <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Main%20Page>  
3 <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/English>  
4 <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/French>  
5 <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Italian>  
6 <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Spanish>  
7 <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Romanian>





## 5 Introduction to the Latin Language

### 5.1 Simple and Compound Words

In Latin, words are either:

- **simple** (words that consist of only one part). For example:

| Latin | English |
|-------|---------|
| eo    | I go    |
| fero  | I carry |
| do    | I give  |

- **compound** (words that consist of more than one part, for example, a root word combined with a prefix). For example:

| Latin     | English        |
|-----------|----------------|
| abeo      | I go away      |
| transfero | I carry across |
| reddo     | I give back    |

### 5.2 Word Parts

Inflected words (i.e., words having ending- or spelling-changes according to their grammatical functions in the sentence) have a **stem** and a **root**.

The Stem

The stem is the part of the word to which various suffixes are added. The final suffix determines either the role of the word in the sentence (for example, when a Roman slave wished to address his *dominus* (master), he used the vocative form *domine* -- equivalent to "O master" in English) or the person involved in the action (for example, "I dominate" may be expressed as "domin-or", and "they dominate" as "domin-antur"). In these cases, *domin-* is the stem and *-us*, *-e*, *-or* and *-antur* are suffixes. The addition of such suffixes is called *inflection*. This is discussed further in the Summary<sup>1</sup>.

The Root

The root is the part of the word that carries the essential meaning. For example the stem of *agito* (I drive onward) is *agit-*, whose root is *ag* (do, drive), which is in common to words of

---

<sup>1</sup> Chapter 56 on page 221

similar meaning: *ago* (I do, drive), *agmen* (that which is driven, such as a flock), etc. Notice the essential difference between a root and a stem. To the root "ag" has been added a suffix "(i)to-" which denotes frequency of action (so "agit-" means to do or drive more than once, hence "agit-o", I agitate, I keep (something) moving, I urge, I impel).

In contrast, English uses word order more than inflection to determine the function of a word within a sentence. English also uses words like pronouns (I, she, etc.) and prepositions (to, at, etc.) where Latin generally prefers inflexions. Thus "dom-i" (noun -- "at home"), "ag-unt" (verb -- "they do/drive").

### Primitives

Primitives occur when both the stem and the root are the same. For example, in the word *agere* (to do, drive) both the stem and the root are the same: "ag-".

### Derivatives

Derivatives occur when the root or stem is modified. For example, the stem *flamm-* from the noun *flamma* has the root "flag" ("blaze"), "nosco" (I know) from the verb "noscere" has the root "gno-" ("know").

### Suffixes

Latin attaches suffixes ("endings") to stems to turn them into words (most stems and roots cannot be used in sentences without an ending). This inflection is essential to forming Latin sentences. The various suffixes and their translations will be learned in the later lessons.

## 6 Types of Words used in Latin

### 6.1 Nouns

A noun (Latin: *nomen*) is "something perceived or conceived by the mind."

There are two kinds of nouns: Substantives and Pronouns.

1. Substantive (*nomen substantivum*) is a name simply denoting something perceived or conceived: *psittacus* - the parrot, *nix* - the snow, *virtus* - virtue.
2. Pronoun (*pronomem*) is a word used in place of a *substantivum*, usually when the *substantivum* is already known: *ea* - she, *ille* - that man

Nouns have changing endings on the stem (known as declension) and three incidents: number, gender and case. Number concerns whether the thing referred to is singular or plural (and the ending shows this); gender classifies a substantive as masculine, feminine or neuter (this determines how the endings of adjectives and pronouns behave) and case (where the ending must show how the noun fits in to the sentence). Adjectives and Pronouns must agree in all incidents when they refer to a substantive.

### 6.2 Verbs

Verbs (*verba*) express an action or a state of being, e.g., *ago* (I do), *dixit* (he said), *venis* (you come). "Conjugation" is the term for adding inflections to verb stems to indicate person (first, second or third), number (singular or plural), tense (present, future, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect or future perfect), voice (active or passive), and mood (indicative, subjunctive or imperative).

A verb can be either *finite* or *infinite*:

1. Finite verbs (*verba finita*) are inflected and have a subject, e.g., I run, you run, he runs, they drive, the computer is turned on.
2. The infinite verbs (*verba infinita*) are not inflected and have no subject, e.g. to run, to drive, to turn on, to have drawn. *Participles*, which are inflected as substantives rather than as verbs, may also be considered infinite, e.g., the *running* boy.

## 6.3 Modifiers

1. Adjectives (*adiectiva*) are used to describe nouns. They indicate a quality perceived or conceived as inherent in, or attributed to, something denoted. E.g., *vir magnus* (the great man), *puella pulchra* (the fair girl)
2. Adverbs (*adverbia*) are similar to adjectives, except that they are used to qualify verbs, adjectives or other adverbs, rather than nouns. In practice, they restrict the meaning of the verb or adjective by specifying how or how much. E.g., *curro celeriter* (I run quickly), *pugnat fortiter* (he fights bravely), "vere jucundus est" (he's really nice), "incredibile callida est" (she's incredibly clever).

## 6.4 Other

Particles are uninflected words that provide extra meaning.

1. Prepositions (*praepositiones*) are little words which tell you how one thing (noun) is behaving in relation to another thing ("the duck was near the pond", "she went towards the wood"). In Latin, the noun that follows a preposition takes a particular ending (called a "case"), depending on the nature of the relationship, or on the nature of the preposition itself. E.g., *ad* (by), *in* (in), *sub* (under). What all this means is that a preposition is a sort of adverb, telling you how something is done. For example, "you go" is a simple statement, but "you go in" suggests that you don't just "go", you go so as to enter something, and so you need a noun for the "something". In English, we might say "you go into the house". In Latin, this would be: "in domum inis". Notice the form "in domum", which means "into" the house -- you're going into it, you're not yet exactly inside it (the ending -um of "domum" is called "accusative"). When you are inside the house, what you do is "in" the house, which is "in domo" (the ending -o of "domo" is called "ablative").
2. Conjunctions (*coniunctiones*) join together clauses and sentences. E.g., *et* (and), *atque* (as well as), *sed* (but).
3. Interjections (*interiectiones*) are exclamations used to express feeling or to gain attention. E.g., *o!* (oh!) *eheu!* (alas!) *ecce!* (behold!)

## 6.5 Articles

Latin has **NO articles** (words for 'the' and 'a'). When translating Latin into English, insert a 'the' or 'a' when appropriate.

## 7 Summary

### Parts of Speech

#### Inflected

*Substantives:* things perceived or conceived

*Adjectives:* indicate a quality perceived or conceived as inherent of something in the substantive

*Pronouns:* nouns used in place of substantives and adjectives

*Verbs:* mark the beginning of an independent clause<sup>1</sup>. The verb in Latin is inflected so that we know the subject ("I learn"), and its tense (to what general or specific time the clause relates to). We call the inflection of a verb **conjugation**

#### Uninflected

*Adverbs:* describe adjectives, verbs, and other adverbs

*Prepositions:* help nouns define their relations to other nouns

*Conjunctions:* Join clauses and sentences

*Interjection:* exclamation

### 7.1 Pronunciation

Latin pronunciation has varied somewhat over the course of its long history, and there are some differences between Classical Latin, as spoken in the Roman Republic and Roman Empire, and Medieval or Ecclesiastical Latin, as spoken in the Middle ages and in the Catholic Church. This text focuses on the classical pronunciation.

|    |   |
|----|---|
| a  | /a/, about, between ah and uh, ad is pronounced almost like "odd"         |
| e  | /ɛ/, get or bed   |
| i  | /ɪ/, hit, pin, in   |
| i  | (Before vowel and not accented) /j/, Y as in yes                          |
| j  | Sometimes used in place of the letter I when making a /j/ sound, as above |
| o  | /ɔ/, on, cot  |
| u  | /ʊ/, put, foot  |
| ā  | /a:/, father  |
| ē  | sounds like saying the letter "A", /e:/, hay                              |
| ī  | sounds like saying the letter "E", /i:/, eat                              |
| ō  | sounds like saying the letter "O", /o:/, clover                           |
| ae | (Diphthong) sounds like saying the letter "I", /aɪ/, aisle                |

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/clause>

|     |  |
|-----|--|
| au  | (Diphthong) /aʊ/, brown, how   |
| oe  | (Diphthong) /ɔɪ/, oil, boy   |
| ou  | (Diphthong) oo   |
| ui  | (Diphthong) we   |
| bs  | (At the end of word) the B sounds a P  |
| bt  | (At the end of a word) the B sounds a P  |
| ch  | /kʰ/, pronounced separately as in archaic, not like in church  |
| gn  | /nɲn/ hang <b>gn</b> ail, sing <b>gn</b> ow  |
| ph  | up <b>ph</b> ill, never sounds an F in philosophy  |
| th  | Pronounced separately as in pot <b>th</b> ole, never like this or theater  |
| c   | /k/, always hard as in cat   |
| g   | /g/, always hard as in get, never soft like adage  |
| r   | Rolled like in the Spanish and Italian languages   |
| s   | Always voiceless as in see, never voiced as in ease  |
| v   | /w/, equivalent to an English W, never sounding an English V (sounds U as a consonant), some texts will write the "v" as a "u" when it serves as a vowel |
| x   | Equivalent to an English Ks as in box, never like exert  |
| (y) | Rarely exists in Latin except in words borrowed from Greek   |
| (z) | Rarely exists in Latin except in words borrowed from Greek   |

Note that Latin, as written by the Romans, did not include macrons (the longmarks over long vowels) or the letters J and U. Macrons are used today as pronunciation guides and do not necessarily need to be written. The sound value of the letter U was filled by the letter V, which sounded either /w/ or /ʊ/ depending on context. Modern texts often preserve the V when it is making a /w/ sound and change it to a U when making a /ʊ/ sound. The letter J is sometimes used in modern times (this Wikibook not included) when the letter I is being used in diphthongs.

## 7.2 Declension Tables

The following tables will be both referenced and explained in all of the following sections, and hence are placed here.

| Singular Nouns                    |         |           |             |           |         |  |
|-----------------------------------|---------|-----------|-------------|-----------|---------|--|
| Declension (Gender)               | 1st (F) | 2nd (M/N) | 3rd (M/F/N) | 4th (M/N) | 5th (F) |  |
| <b>Nominative</b><br>Subject      | puella  | servus    | rēx         | gradus    | rēs     |  |
| <b>Genitive</b><br>Possessive     | puellae | servī     | rēgis       | gradūs    | rēī     |  |
| <b>Dative</b><br>Indirect Object  | puellae | servō     | rēgī        | graduī    | rēī     |  |
| <b>Accusative</b><br>Object       | puellam | servum    | rēgem       | gradum    | rēm     |  |
| <b>Ablative</b>                   | puellā  | servō     | rēge        | gradu     | rē      |  |
| <b>Vocative</b><br>Direct Address | puella  | serve     | rēx         | gradus    | rēs     |  |



Note that nouns in the 3rd declension nominative can have any ending, hence why none is given in bold.

| Plural Nouns        |         |           |             |           |         |
|---------------------|---------|-----------|-------------|-----------|---------|
| Declension (Gender) | 1st (F) | 2nd (M/N) | 3rd (M/F/N) | 4th (M/N) | 5th (F) |
| Nominative          | puellae | servī     | rēgēs       | cornūs    | rēs     |

## 7.3 Grammar Part 1: Nouns and Their Role in Sentences

Noun<sup>2</sup>s in Latin are inflected<sup>3</sup>, which means that endings (also known as suffix<sup>4</sup>es or *suffices*) are appended to the end of the stem<sup>5</sup> to denote these things:

1. Number (whether the noun is singular or plural)
2. Case<sup>6</sup> of the noun (role of the noun in the sentence)
3. Gender<sup>7</sup> (the gender of the word - one of masculine, feminine, or neuter)

Most nouns in English can be modified to indicate number (cat versus cats), and many pronouns can be modified to indicate case (who versus whose) or gender (he versus she, his versus hers). Case is especially important in Latin as meaning cannot be determined by word order as it can be in English, but purely by word endings, or "inflection". Indeed, the words in a Latin sentence can appear in almost any order with little change in meaning. Two sentences with the word orders "Sam ate the orange" and "The orange ate Sam" could potentially mean the same thing in Latin, though the spellings of "orange" and "Sam" would have to change slightly to denote which was the subject (the one eating) and which was the object (the one being eaten).

It is important to note here that although the genders of many words make sense (for example, "puella", meaning a girl, is feminine) many are simply assigned and hold no real meaning. Luckily, as you will find, the gender can often be determined by the spelling of the word (words ending in "us" are almost always masculine, and words ending in "a" are almost always feminine). For many words, however, you will simply have to memorize their gender.

Adjective<sup>8</sup>s themselves must match the number, case, and gender of the noun (be it a substantive or a pronoun) they modify. If a noun is nominative singular feminine (see case table<sup>9</sup> below), then the adjective describing it must also be nominative singular feminine. If the noun is accusative plural masculine, then the adjective must be accusative plural masculine. This will be expanded on in the Adjectives<sup>10</sup> section below. The advantage of this system is that adjectives do not need to be adjacent to their respective nouns, as one would be able to tell which noun they modify by which noun they appear to agree with.

### 7.3.1 Declension

**All substantives** are part of one of 5 categories, called **declensions**. Each declension has a set of standard suffixes that indicate case and number. Usually gender is indicated by the suffix, although there are many exceptions. Therefore, you must memorize the gender of every substantive you learn.

- 
- 2 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Noun>
  - 3 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Inflected%20language>
  - 4 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/suffix>
  - 5 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/stem>
  - 6 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Declension>
  - 7 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grammatical%20gender>
  - 8 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adjective>
  - 9 Chapter 56.3.2 on page 227
  - 10 Chapter 56.4 on page 229

By familiarizing yourself with the above tables<sup>11</sup>, you could deduce that originally the suffix indicating number, case, and gender was the same for every noun. However, as the language developed, nouns with a common stem formed declensions and sounds changed. Similar processes happen continually over time, even today.

The above tables allow you to familiarize yourself with the existence of each declension, though by no means are you expected to memorize it now. Nonetheless, you will have to memorize it as you are formally introduced to individual cases and declensions in future lessons. Because of its introductory purpose, it is considerably simplified and incomplete, and therefore should not be used as a reference in the future.

Adjectives are also classed into declensions:

1. **1st/2nd declension adjectives...**

- a) ...Use 1st declension suffixes from the substantive declension table when describing feminine nouns.
- b) ...Use 2nd declension masculine suffixes from the above table when describing masculine nouns.
- c) ...Use 2nd declension neuter suffixes (*not* found in the above table) when describing neuter nouns.

2. **3rd declension adjectives** behave as 'i' stem substantives unless specified. Masculine and Feminine suffixes (which are the same) will be used if describing masculine and feminine nouns, and Neuter suffixes will be used when describing neuter nouns.

Pronouns are not part of any declension, as they are all irregular, and simply have to be memorized.

### 7.3.2 Case

Cases (Latin: *casus*) determine the role of the noun in the sentence in relation to other parts of the sentence.

There are six cases, Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative and Ablative. Vocative (Lesson 3) can be considered a sort of miniature case, generally not being accepted as a true one. Additionally, some nouns have a locative case, which will be covered later. As nominative and accusative are the most basic, these will be taught first (the rest will be covered in later lessons).

#### The Use of the Cases

(all words in bold are in the case specified in the first column)

| Case       | Role in sentence            | Example (Latin)        | Example (English)  |
|------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|--|
| Nominative | Subject (performs the verb) | <b>Vir</b> lupum vult. | <b>The man</b> wants a wolf.                                   |
| Genitive   | Description and possession  | Lupus <b>virī</b> est. | It is the <b>man's</b> wolf/It is the wolf <b>of the man</b> . |

<sup>11</sup> Chapter 56.2 on page 222

**The Use of the Cases****(all words in bold are in the case specified in the first column)**

| Case       | Role in sentence   | Example (Latin)              | Example (English)                   |
|------------|--|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Dative     | Indirect object<br>(receives the direct object)                    | <b>Lupō</b> dedit vir.       | The man gave to <b>the wolf</b> .   |
| Accusative | Direct object (receives the action of the verb)                    | Vir <b>lupum</b> videt.      | The man sees <b>the wolf</b> .      |
| Ablative   | Various (modify or limit nouns by ideas of where, when, how, etc.) | Ā quō datum? Ā <b>virō</b> . | By whom given?<br><b>By a man</b> . |
| Vocative   | Direct address<br>(speaking to somebody directly)                  | Salvē, <b>Brute!</b>         | Hello, <b>Brutus!</b>               |

**7.3.3 Gender**

**All substantives**, including inanimate objects, have a particular gender (genera), which is either masculine, feminine, or neuter.

For example, Vir, "a man," is masculine. Marītus, "a husband," is also masculine. Puella, "a girl," is feminine. Māter, "a mother," is feminine. Even inanimate objects are assigned gender, including all the moons, stars, trees, tools, and so forth. Logic will give you little help in determining what the genders of inanimate objects are, and with many nouns memorization is required. Luckily, for many nouns, the spelling of the word indicates the gender.

Certain rules may be utilized to determine the gender of an inanimate substantive. Declension is a good indication of gender, especially for 1st and 2nd declension substantives. 1st declension substantives (substantives with an -a suffix) are usually feminine and second declension nouns (substantives with an -us suffix) are usually masculine or neuter. There are a few exceptions, and they will have to be learned. 3rd declension nouns can be either masculine, feminine or neuter (thus the gender will often have to be memorized). 4th declension nouns are usually masculine, sometimes neuter while 5th declension nouns are usually feminine.

1st/2nd declension adjectives alternate the set of endings depending on the gender of noun it describes (see above: Agreement of the Gender of Nouns and the Adjective). If the adjective describes a feminine noun, the adjective must use 1st declension endings, if the adjective describes a masculine noun, the adjective must use 2nd declension masculine endings, if the adjective describes a neuter noun the adjective must use 2nd declension neuter endings.

3rd declension adjectives use the same set of endings for masculine and feminine nouns. However, a slightly different set of endings are used when describing neuter nouns.

## 7.4 Adjectives

As stated above, adjectives must match the gender, number, and case of the noun (be the noun a substantive, or a pronoun) they modify. However, there are many occasions where logic cannot be used to determine the gender of inanimate objects, as genders are assigned arbitrarily when the noun has no literal gender. Furthermore, the declension of the noun, often determined by the spelling, can in turn be used to determine the gender, especially for the 1st and 2nd. However, this is never the case for the third declension, as the declension itself is not primarily assigned to any gender and the spelling of the nominative ("default") stem is random, leaving you with no hints.

A noun and its adjective must also be in the same case. Otherwise, it is impossible to tell which nouns pair up to their respective adjectives in a sentence, as the words in a Latin sentence can appear in any order. See the examples below.

|Notice how "magna" changes to "magnae" to agree with the pluralized "puellae".

| Latin                                  | English       |
|--|---------------|
| Puella (nominative sing., fem.)        | Girl          |
| Puella magna                           | The big girl  |
| Puellae (nominative <b>pl.</b> , fem.) | Girls         |
| Puellae magnae                         | The big girls |

|Notice how "magna" becomes "magnus" to agree with the masculine word "servus". Also notice that "magnus" changes to "magnum" to agree with the noun it's describing in case, though do not concern yourself with the difference between cases for the time being.

| Latin                                  | English       |
|--|---------------|
| Servus (nominative sing, mas.)         | Slave         |
| Servus magnus                          | The big slave |
| Servum ( <b>accusative</b> sing, mas.) | Slave         |
| Servum magnum                          | The big slave |

|Notice that "magna" is feminine because "arbor" is feminine, despite that it does not end in "a" like "puella". The word "arbor" is one of the situations where you will simply have to memorize the gender.

| Latin                         | English      |
|-------------------------------|--------------|
| Arbor (nominative sing, fem.) | Tree         |
| Arbor magna                   | The big tree |

## 7.5 Recapitulation

- Declensions are used to categorize nouns in groups. There are 5 declensions total.
- Each of the five declensions has a distinct set of endings which are appended to nouns of that declension.

- The endings indicate the case and number when appended to the stem of a noun.
- A substantive may use only the endings of the declension of which it is a part.
- Each substantive has a predefined gender which almost never changes and is separate from the suffix.
- Adjectives are a part of the 1st/2nd declension and 3rd declension.
- Adjectives use the gender of the noun that they modify.

**Therefore:**

- An adjective of the 1st/2nd declension uses 1st declension endings when describing a feminine noun, a 2nd declension masculine ending when describing masculine noun, and 2nd declension neuter when describing a neuter noun.
- An adjective of the 3rd declension uses the same set of endings when describing masculine and feminine nouns and another set of endings when describing neuter nouns. (Actually, there are 3-termination, 2-termination, and 1-termination 3rd declension adjectives. If the adjective is 3-termination, e.g., acer (f. sing.), acris (m. sing.), acer (n. sing.), acres (f. pl.), acres (m. pl.), or acria (n. pl.), then use the appropriate ending; if the adjective is 2-termination, then one termination will be masculine/feminine and the other neuter; if the adjective is 1-termination, the common form is used.)

Before you proceed to the next lesson, complete the exercises below so you will be able to apply this knowledge to Latin.

## 7.6 Exercises

### Exercise: Questions

1. What are the three genders?
2. What is the number (singular/plural) of the following English words:
  - a) cow
  - b) dogs
  - c) genders
  - d) adjective
  - e) children
  - f) slice
  - g) mice
  - h) geese
3. Describe the relationship between an adjective and the noun which it modifies.
4. How many declensions are there?
5. Determine the declension of each Latin word:
  - puella (*girl*)
  - ianua (*door*)
  - amicus (*friend*)
  - ludus (*game*)
  - casa (*house*)
  - rex (*king*)

6. What gender are 1st declension substantives mostly?
7. What genders are 2nd declension substantives mostly?
8. What grammatical features of a word that can be determined by looking at its ending?

**Solution**

1. Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter
2. What is the number (singular/plural) of the following English words:
  - a) S
  - b) P
  - c) P
  - d) S
  - e) P
  - f) S
  - g) P
  - h) P
3. The adjective takes on the case and gender (but not always the declension) of the noun it describes
4. Five
5. Determine the declension of each Latin word:
  - a) 1st
  - b) 1st
  - c) 2nd
  - d) 2nd
  - e) 1st
  - f) 3rd
6. Feminine
7. Masculine
8. It varies slightly from word-to-word; Declension/Case, Number, and sometimes Gender.

**7.7 Chapter 1: Basic Sentences**





## 8 The Nominative Case

### 8.1 The Nominative Case

The nominative case refers to the subject of the sentence. It is also one of the three cases of modern English. Every sentence must have a subject. For example:

Caesar is emperor of Rome.

Caesar is the subject of this sentence therefore Caesar is given in the nominative case.

Caesar's army entered Rome

Above is the genitive case which shows possession; the army was Caesar's army. We have changed the case of the word "Caesar" by altering its end. The nominative case has been changed to the genitive case by the addition of an apostrophe and the letter "s".

Latin cases are formed in the same way. The first step is to learn some words in their nominative case so as to become familiar with their endings which will later be changed to form the other cases.

### 8.2 Notes on Vocabulary

| Lesson Vocabulary |             |
|-------------------|-------------|
| Latin             | English     |
| magn-us -a -um    | big         |
| bon-us -a -um     | good        |
| mal-us -a -um     | bad         |
| puell-a -ae (f.)  | girl        |
| puer (m.)         | boy         |
| māter (f.)        | mother      |
| domin-a (f.)      | mistress    |
| domin-us (m.)     | master      |
| lūd-us (m.)       | school      |
| triclīni-um (n.)  | dining room |
| templ-um (n.)     | temple      |

| Lesson Vocabulary   |  |
|---|--|
| Latin   | English  |
| esse<br>(ego) sum<br>(tū) es<br><b>est</b><br>(nōs) sumus<br>(vōs) estis<br>sunt  | to be<br>I am<br>you (singular) are<br><b>(he/she/it) is*</b><br>we are<br>you (plural) are<br><b>(they) are</b> |
| <b>ambula-t, ambula-nt</b>  | <b>(he/she/it is) walking, (they are) walking</b>  |
| <b>curri-t, curru-nt</b>  | <b>(he/she/it is) running, (they are) running</b>  |
| <b>nōn</b>  | An adverb placed before a verb meaning 'not' thus negating the verb.   |
| Some second declension masculine end in <i>-r</i> instead of <i>-us</i> in the nominative case — boy is <i>puer</i> , not <i>puer-us</i> . Of the nouns discussed on this page, this rule only applies to <i>puer</i> . |  |

Of the "to be" verbs listed in the table, only **est** and **sunt** will be covered in this lesson. The table simply allows you to familiarize yourself with them, as verbs will be covered more in future lessons.

The nominative case is used for the subject of the sentence (or any noun that is the equivalent of the subject).

In this chapter, the following conventions will be used for nouns:

- *m.* = masculine
- *f.* = feminine
- *n.* = neuter
- First and second declension substantives are given with at least the nominative case. (We will add the genitive singular as time permits. It is not strictly necessary, but you should get in the habit now of declining nouns based on the genitive stem and not the nominative. This chapter is therefore slightly misleading in this regard.)
- Third, fourth, and fifth declension substantives are given with the nominative and genitive singular.

### 8.3 Overview of Adjectives

An adjective is simply any word that describes a noun, such as an object or subject in a sentence. Of course, whole phrases may be used to describe nouns, but adjectives are individual words. For example:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>English</b><br>The <b>good</b> <i>boy</i> walks. | <b>Latin</b><br><i>Puer</i> <b>bonus</b> ambulat. |
|---|---|

An adjective can also be used in a sentence opposite a form of "to be." The "to be" verb simply serves as a linking verb, as "the good boy" is an incomplete sentence, but "the boy is good" is a complete sentence.

**English**

The boy *is* good.

**Latin**

Puer **bonus** *est*.

As shown above, the same is true in Latin.

## 8.4 Adjectives in Latin

Like nouns, adjectives in Latin are declined. The vast majority take either the first and second declension (*antiquus -a -um*) or the third declension (*ferox, ferocis*). All such adjectives must agree with the nouns they describe in gender, number, and case, **but not necessarily declension**.

- First and second declension adjectives have three distinct genders. Feminine adjectives require the first declension, masculine the second, and neuter the second. First/second declension adjectives use all three gender suffixes: -us, -a, -um (masculine, feminine, and neuter, respectively). This is because description is not limited to a single gender. For example, being good is not a quality limited to a single gender. Boys can be good, girls can be good, and things can be good. So, since all three genders must apply, we don't label adjectives as particularly *m.*, *f.*, or *n.*
- Third declension adjectives are given with the nominative and genitive singular. **This, however, is only true for third declension adjectives of one termination, so again this chapter is misleading in this regard.** Most third declension adjectives do not have separate masculine and feminine forms. (Neuter adjectives follow the third declension neuter pattern.)

These words will look like the adjective **antiquus** (old, ancient):

*antiquus* (masculine), *antiqua* (feminine), *antiquum* (neuter).

Third declension adjectives typically look more like **ferox, ferocis** (wild, bold). This is because the third declension has no stem assigned to the nominative singular and is a "wild card" in that regard.

Adjectives often come **after the word they describe**. (But since word order is not central to the meaning of a Latin sentence, the adjective may appear anywhere within the sentence. In poetry, for example, several words often separate an adjective from the noun it modifies.)

For example: **Nota bene:** In the following examples the -us ending stands for the **masculine (m.)** gender, the -a for the **feminine (f.)** gender, and the -um stands for the **neuter (n.)** gender. So **magnus** is masculine, **magna** is feminine and **magnum** is neuter.

**Latin**

Puella bona est.

Dominus bonus est.

Templum magnum est.

**English**

The girl is good.

The master is good.

The temple is big.

*Bona* is an adjective describing a feminine substantive, such as *puella*.

*Bonus* is an adjective describing a masculine substantive, such as *dominus*.

## 8.5 Grammar: Pluralizing Nominatives

| Number   | First declension feminine | Second declension masculine | Second declension neuter |
|----------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| Singular | puell- <b>a</b>           | lūd- <b>us</b>              | triclini- <b>um</b>      |
| Plural   | puell- <b>ae</b>          | lūd- <b>ī</b>               | triclini- <b>a</b>       |

To pluralize most first and second declension nouns, replace the singular suffix with the equivalent plural suffix. All adjectives that describe the noun must be pluralized as well because adjectives must agree in case, number, and gender (but not necessarily declension). With the adjectives given, use first declension with feminine nouns and second declension with masculine nouns. In English we use the same nominative plural endings for words we have borrowed from Latin, so it may be helpful to remember we say one vertebr-a but two vertebr-ae, one radi-us but two radi-ī, and one medium but multi-medi-a.

## 8.6 Basic verbs

Verbs in Latin work quite differently than those in English. Study the following table, then view the examples below, though keep in mind that you only need to fully understand the difference between numbers for the time being.

|        | English   | Latin   |
|--------|---|---|
| Number | Only pluralize the noun that is being pluralized, not the adjectives that describe it or the verb that it is performing.  | All three are pluralized. In this context, singular verbs end in "-t" (est, ambulat), and plural verbs end in "-nt" (sunt, ambulant).         |
| Tense  | The ending is sometimes changed, though the words surrounding the verb can also be used to denote tense. Consider these examples: "he will walk, he is walking, he walks, he walked". | The stem is used to denote the tense, though this will be covered in a future lesson. In this lesson, only the present tense is being taught. |

|        | English  | Latin  |
|--------|--|--|
| Person | The subject of the sentence is used to determine the person. If I am the subject of the sentence, then the sentence is in the first person. If you are the subject, then the second person, and so forth with the third. In this lesson, only the third person is being taught, which refers to anyone other than the speaker or the listener. | The stem also denotes the person, though as previously stated, only third person is being taught in this lesson. |

### 8.6.1 Examples

|Notice how "magnum" changes to "magna" to agree with the pluralized "triclinia".

| Latin  | English                     |
|--|-----------------------------|
| puell-a bon-a es-t.<br><i>And to pluralize:</i>  | The girl is good.           |
| puell-ae bon-ae su-nt  | The girls are good.         |
| Note that verbs do not have gender, in that they do not change to the gender of the word that they are describing.   |                             |
| Puer bon-us ambula-t.<br><i>And to pluralize:</i>  | The good boy is walking.    |
| Puer-ī bon-ī ambula-nt   | The good boys are walking.  |
| You will notice that neither the linking verbs "est" nor "sunt" appear in the previous two sentences. The meaning of the linking verbs are assumed in Latin sentences, as their respective meanings already exist in the verb stems. |                             |
| triclini-um magn-um es-t<br><i>And to pluralize:</i>   | The dining room is large.   |
| triclini-a magn-a su-nt  | The dining rooms are large. |

## 8.7 Further Examples

### 8.7.1 Example 1

| Latin              | English            |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| templum magnum est | The temple is big. |

#### Notes

- The adjective *magnus* -a -um must agree with *templum* in gender, number, and case, so the correct form is *magnum* (neuter nominative singular).
- Something like *templum magnus est* is **incorrect** because *magn-us* does not agree with *templ-um*. To a Latin speaker, this would sound like nonsense.

### 8.7.2 Example 2

| Latin             | English          |
|-------------------|------------------|
| puella magna est. | The girl is big. |

**Notes:** In the same way, the adjective *magnus -a -um* must agree with *puella* in gender, number, and case, so the correct form is *magna* (feminine nominative singular, a-declinatio).

### 8.7.3 Example 3

| Latin          | English              |
|----------------|----------------------|
| Puer currit.   | The boy is running.  |
| Pueri currunt. | The boys are running |

**Notes:** You may notice that, when pluralized, "currit" becomes "currunt". The original spelling was probably "currint", but changed to "currunt" over time to make it easier to say. This is true of any pluralized verbs that would otherwise be ending in "-int".

### 8.7.4 Example 4

| Latin           | English              |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| lūdī magnī sunt | The schools are big. |

**Notes:** The adjective *magnus -a -um* in this case must agree with *lūdī* in gender, number, and case, so the correct form is *magnī* (masculine nominative plural).

## 8.8 Third Declension Nouns and Adjectives

Third declension nouns and adjectives follow a different pattern. The nominative singular stem is not defined, and as such, any letter (or letters) can serve as a third declension stem. For example, *Māter* (mother) is a third declension noun in the nominative case. When pluralized, it becomes *Mātrēs*. "-ēs" is attached to the end of a third declension noun to pluralize it, as opposed to changing the ending completely, because there is no uniform way to do so given the third declension's random nature.

You may have also noticed that the "e" in "Māter" was dropped when pluralized. This often happens when a stem is attached to a third declension noun of similar spelling (example, "Pater" (father) becomes "Patrēs")

Examples:

| Latin             | English               |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| māter bona est    | The mother is good.   |
| mātrēs bonae sunt | The mothers are good. |

| Latin             | English                |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| pater magnus est  | The father is large.   |
| patrēs magnī sunt | The fathers are large. |
| amīcus fortis est | The friend is strong.  |
| amīcī fortēs sunt | The friends are strong |

Third declension nouns are listed with the nominative case and the genitive case to provide the main stem, which will be covered in a few lessons. All other nouns are also listed with the genitive for standardization, but often just the genitive ending is given. For example:

| Latin             | English |
|-------------------|---------|
| pater, patris     | father  |
| oratio, orationis | speech  |
| uxor, uxoris      | wife    |
| canis, canis      | dog     |
| proelium, -ī      | battle  |
| oculus, -ī        | eye     |
| amīcus, -ī        | friend  |

All other types of nouns are also generally listed with the genitive

Adjectives with a nominative ending in -is and the same stem in the nominative and in the other cases (eg. fortis) end in -e in the neuter and -ia in the neuter plural.

For example:

- dies difficilis = the difficult day
- proelium difficile = the difficult battle
- proelia difficilia = the difficult battles

## 8.9 Exercises

### Exercise: Translation

- Translate the following Latin words into English.
  - dominus bonus
  - ludus malus
  - puella magna
  - triclinium est magnum
- Translate into Latin.
  - the good boy
  - the large master
  - The temple is large.
  - The master is bad.

### Solution



1. Translate the following Latin words into English.
  - a) The good master
  - b) The bad school
  - c) The big girl
  - d) The dining room is large
2. Translate into Latin.
  - a) Puer bonus
  - b) dominus magnus
  - c) templum magnum est
  - d) dominus malus est

## 9 Present indicative active construct



## 10 Grammatical Introduction to Verbs

This introductory section may be a bit overwhelming, but is an overall look at verbs. The majority of this section will be covered in later chapters. Nevertheless, looking over this chapter may help you to familiarize yourself with verbs.

Verbs are parts of speech which denote action. There are two main forms of verbs in Latin:

- Principal Verbs (the main verb which is found in every sentence. e.g.,: vir ambulat = the man is walking)
- Adjectival Verbs (also known as participles, gerunds and gerundives which describe the state of the described noun. e.g.,: vir ambulans = the walking man. The verb behaves as an adjective)

Every sentence must have a verb. In a sense, the principal verb is the sentence and all the nouns, adverbs and participles are only describing the scenario of the verb. Thus in Latin this constitutes a sentence:

est.

If you want to explain 'who' is or exists, you add a nominative substantive:

Cornēlia est.

We now know Cornelia 'is'. But what is she? So we add an adjective.

Cornēlia est bona.

Now we can see that Cornelia is good, but to elaborate further we can add an adverb:

Cornēlia vix est bona.

Now we know that Cornelia is 'hardly' (*vix*<sup>1</sup>: hardly, scarcely, barely) good.

Thus, in English, the shortest Latin sentence is:

You are.

in Latin:

---

1 <http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/vix%23Latin>

es

## 10.1 Examples

These two examples will demonstrate the difference between an adjectival verb and a principal verb.

The **resurrected** Jesus **appeared** to his disciples.

'resurrected' is a *perfect participle* (Adjectival) describing Jesus, while 'appeared' is the *principal verb* in the sentence.

The **shocked** disciples **see** Jesus.

'shocked' is a *perfect participle* (Adjectival) describing the disciples, while 'see' is the *principal verb* in the sentence.

### 10.1.1 Exercises

#### Exercise: Answer

1. What is the difference between a principal and adjectival verb?
2. What constitutes a sentence?
3. Write a sentence in English, and Latin.
4. Conjugate the verb 'to be' in the present tense in English and Latin (I am, You are, He is etc.)

#### Solution

1. Principal verbs are main verb which is found in every sentence. Adjectival Verbs are participles, gerunds and gerundives which describe the state of the described noun.
2. a verb
3. Egō Sum, I am
4. Sum, es, est, sumus, estis, sunt

## 10.2 Personal Endings

Verbs in Latin are inflected to reflect the person who performs the action. English does the same to some extent in the verb to be:

| Latin | English        |
|-------|----------------|
| sum   | I am           |
| es    | You are        |
| est   | (He/she/it) is |
| sumus | We are         |
| estis | You (all) are  |

sunt

They are

Latin, however, inflects all verbs, and is much more extensive than English, allowing writers and speakers of Latin to often drop the personal pronoun (as mentioned last lesson), as the performer of the action is understood by the formation of the verb. The Personal pronoun is only usually added for emphasis. In a way, the ending on Latin verbs are a type of pronoun.

### 10.2.1 Exercises

#### Exercise: Answer

1. What do the personal pronouns indicate?

#### Solution

1. Personal pronouns (ego, tu, nos, vos, etc.) add emphasis. They are usually omitted (left out) because they are understood.

Example: *[Ego] amō patrem<sup>2</sup> meum et matrem<sup>3</sup> meam.*

I love my mother and my father. (you don't have to write *ego*, it is understood)

## 10.3 Moods

There are several moods. Each has its own uses to convey certain ideas. The most common moods are:

- Indicative • Subjunctive or Conjunctive • Imperative

The two moods we will first learn are the imperative (commands and orders) and the indicative (declarative statements and factual questions).

### 10.3.1 Exercises

#### Exercise: Answer

1. List the most common moods.
2. What two moods are we going to learn about in this lesson, and what do they let us construct?

#### Solution

1. Indicative, subjunctive (or conjunctive) and imperative.
2. The moods we are going to learn about first are:

**Imperative:** Which we use when we make orders.

*Go away. Fetch me the keys. Do not order me around!*

**Indicative:** Statements which are declarative, and questions concerning facts.

John *plays* football.

## 10.4 Voice

There are two constructions verbs can have regarding voice.

Verbs can have either an active or passive voice.

E.g. 'I smash the car.' 'smash' is an active verb construct.

The passive is used when the nominative is affected by the verb.

E.g. 'The car is smashed by me.' 'is smashed' is a passive construct.

### 10.4.1 Exercises

#### Exercise: Translate

1. What is 'voice'?
2. What is active voice?
3. What is passive voice?
4. Construct a sentence in English using each of these voices.

#### Solution

1. Voice is how a verb is constructed.
2. When the subject affects the verb
3. When the nominative is affected by the verb
4. Ex.- I carried, I am being carried.

## 10.5 Tense

Tense in Latin comprises two parts: TIME and ASPECT. Time reflects when the action is occurring or did occur: past, present, or future. Aspect refers to the nature of the action: simple, completed, or repeated. The "completed" aspect is generally termed "perfective" and repeated aspect "imperfective."

Theoretically, a verb could have nine tenses (combinations of time and aspect). However, Latin only has six, since some possible combinations are expressed by the same verb forms. Latin tenses do not correspond exactly to English ones.

Below is a rough guide to tense in Latin.

|   |              |   |   |   |
|---|--------------|---|---|---|
| A | Time         | Present                                 | Future  | Past                                      |
| S |              |   |   |   |
| P |              |   |   |   |
| E |              |   |   |   |
| C | Imperfective | <i>Present Tense</i><br>"I am walking"  | <i>Future Tense</i><br>"I will be walking"          | <i>Imperfect Tense</i><br>"I was walking" |
| T |              |   |   |   |
|   | Perfective   | <i>Perfect Tense</i><br>"I have walked" | <i>Future Perfect Tense</i><br>"I will have walked" | <i>Pluperfect Tense</i><br>"I had walked" |



As is evident, some Latin tenses do "double duty." The Latin Present and Future Tenses can either express simple or progressive aspect. Particularly difficult to grasp is the Latin Perfect tense, which can either express an action completed from the point of view of the present ("I have just now finished walking"), or a simple action in past time (its "aorist" sense, from the old Indo European aorist tense, which Latin lost but is still present in Greek).

### 10.5.1 Exercises

#### Exercise: Translate

1. Copy out the above table.
2. Study the table.

**Solution** Vide (see) the table above.

## 10.6 Infinitive

The infinitive (impersonal) is the form of the verb which simply means 'to (verb)' e.g. 'to do', or 'to be', or 'to love', or 'to hate' etc. All forms which are not in the infinitive are in the finite (personalised) form.

The infinitive has a -re at the end of the stem of the verb. The infinitive of 'to be' is an exception and is 'esse'.

Dēbeō currere nunc = I ought to run now.

Esse, aut nōn esse = To be, or not to be?

### 10.6.1 Exercises

Answer these two questions about the **infinitive** and **finite**.

#### Exercise: Answer

1. What is the **infinitive**? Give an example.
2. What is the **finite**? Give an example.

#### Solution

1. The **infinitive** is the verb-form that simply mean "to (verb)".  
To *sing*, to *dance*, to *drink*, to *love*.
2. Every verb which is not in the infinitive, is in the **finite**.  
He *smells*, we *plot*, she had *drunk*, he *pours*.

## 10.7 Irregularities

Verbs which use the passive formation in an active sense are known as deponent. Verbs which don't have a form for every tense and mood are known as defective. You will meet a few words like this soon.

### 10.7.1 Exercises

#### Exercise: Answer

1. What is a deponent verb?
2. What is an irregular verb?
3. What is a defective verb?

#### Solution

1. A verb which uses the passive voice in an active sense.
2. A verb that does not follow the normal rules of conjugation.
3. A verb missing forms for some tenses or moods.

## 10.8 Personal Pronouns

In case you do ever use a personal pronoun to emphasise the SUBJECT of the verb, you must remember that the personal pronoun must be in the nominative case and the number and person of the verb must match that of the subject. (Review Lesson 7 if unfamiliar with the terms person and subject).

### 10.8.1 Exercises

#### Exercise: Translate

1. What case should the subject (performer) of the verb be in?
2. What number should the principal verb be?
3. What person and number is 'ego'?
4. What person and number is 'I'?
5. What person and number is 'we'?
6. What person and number is 'thou'?
7. What person and number is 'ye'?
8. What person and number is 'vōs'?
9. What person and number is 'nōs'?
10. What person and number is 'tū'?
11. What person and number is 'boy'?

#### Solution

1. Nominative case
2. First person, singular.
3. First person, singular.
4. First person, singular.
5. First person, plural.
6. Second person, singular.
7. Second person, plural.
8. Second person, plural.
9. First person, plural.
10. Second person, singular.
11. Third person, singular.

## 10.9 Principal Parts

When one looks up a verb in the dictionary, the principal parts are given. From these principal parts you can find the correct form of the verb for every circumstance.

| Present Indicative<br>Active 1st Person   | Present Infinitive                                | Perfect Indicative<br>Active 1st Person | Supine   |
|---|---|---|--|
| amō   | amāre   | amāvi                                   | amātum   |
| Determines<br>whether the vowel<br>is dropped in the<br>1st person singular<br>present. | Gives the imper-<br>fect stem and in-<br>finitive | Gives the perfect<br>stem               | Allows you to<br>form adjectival<br>forms of the verb<br>(Participles) |

### 10.9.1 Exercises

Answer this question about **principal parts**.

#### Exercise: Answer

1. What do the **principal parts** allow you to do?

#### Solution

1. The principal parts are the verb-forms you find when you look in the dictionary.  
E.g. if you look for the verb *amō* (love) in a dictionary you would find:  
amō • amāre • amāvi • amātum

These four forms will help you form every Latin verb you want.

## 10.10 Using the Dictionary

All nouns are given in the nominative, as well as the declension and gender of the noun. Verbs are alphabetized using the 1st person singular (the first principal part) and the infinitive is given. Supplementary principal parts are given if the various other principal parts do not follow the standard pattern of formation from the infinitive and 1st person singular.



# 11 Verbs: Conjugation in the Present Imperfect

The present imperfect is the simplest tense. To form the present imperfect all that is required is to place the personal endings at the end of the verb stem.

Thus, if you have the stem 'ama' (love), to make it 'I love' you place an *ō* at the end.

|         |   |             |
|---------|---|-------------|
| I love  | = | amō (amaō*) |
| we love | = | amāmus      |

- Latin drops the 'a' in amaō forming amō.

Latin **could** add personal pronouns, however only for added emphasis and in conjunction with the corresponding person ending on the verb. Otherwise the sentence will not make sense. For example:

ego amō = I (not you) love

nōs amāmus = We (not you) love

but that would be for special emphasis: It's **I**, not you, who love.

Here are the forms of the verb 'porta', carry, in the present imperfect tense:

|          |                          |                        |
|----------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| portō    | I carry                  | first person singular  |
| portās   | thou carriest, you carry | second person singular |
| portat   | he, she, it carries      | third person singular  |
| portāmus | we carry                 | first person plural    |
| portātis | you (all) carry          | second person plural   |
| portant  | they carry               | third person plural    |

'porto' can also be translated 'I am carrying' (present imperfect), 'I do carry' (present emphatic). 'I carry' is known as the 'present simple' tense in English.. Again the 'a' gets dropped when the 'ō' is placed on porta. Porta, and ama are known as 1st conjugation verbs; in other words, verbs which have a stem ending in 'a'.

There are three other conjugations, and below are some examples of verbs from each of the four conjugations (present imperfect tense):

|                             |                          |                           |                          |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| porta, carry (1st.<br>Conj) | mone, warn (2nd<br>Conj) | rege, rule (3rd<br>Conj.) | audī, hear (4th<br>Conj) |
| portō, I carry              | moneō, I warn            | regō, I rule              | audiō, I hear            |
| portās, thou carri-<br>est  | monēs, thou<br>warnest   | regis, thou rulest        | audis, thou hear-<br>est |

|                              |                           |                           |                           |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| portat, he/she/it<br>carries | monet, he/she/it<br>warns | regit, he/she/it<br>rules | audit, he/she/it<br>hears |
| portāmus, we<br>carry        | monēmus, we<br>warn       | regimus, we rule          | audimus, we hear          |
| portātis, ye carry           | monētis, ye warn          | regitis, ye rule          | auditis, ye hear          |
| portant, they<br>carry       | monent, they<br>warn      | regunt, they rule         | audiunt, they<br>hear     |

Each verb uses the same final letter or letters to indicate the 'subject' - I, thou, he/she/it, we, you, they.

Before these final letters, the first conjugation has an 'a' (although when an 'o' is placed, the 'a' is often dropped), the second an 'e', and the third and fourth usually an 'i'. The third person plural forms in the third and fourth conjugations have a 'u'. These verb forms really should be learned by heart.

The most common verb of all is irregular (see next lesson). Here is a table of the verb 'to be' in Latin, English, and four Romantic languages (French, Spanish, Italian and Portuguese)

|          |              |                |                    |         |               |
|----------|--------------|----------------|--------------------|---------|---------------|
| esto: be |              |                |                    |         |               |
| Latin    | English      | French         | Spanish            | Italian | Portuguese    |
| sum      | I am         | je suis        | yo soy             | sono    | eu sou        |
| es       | thou art     | tu es          | tú eres            | sei     | tu és         |
| est      | he/she/it is | il/elle est    | él/ella es         | è       | ele/ela é     |
| sumus    | we are       | nous sommes    | nosotros/-as somos | siamo   | nós somos     |
| estis    | ye are       | vous êtes      | vosotros/-as sois  | siete   | vós sois      |
| sunt     | they are     | ils/elles sont | ellos/-as son      | sono    | eles/elas são |



The personal endings are the same as in the four regular conjugations.

### 11.0.1 Exercises

*Conjugate (find how a verb is in different forms) the verb 'amō'.*

#### **Exercise: Translate**

What form of the verb 'amō' (hint: amō is conjugated like portō in the table above) would the following words use to become the suffix:

1. ego (I)
2. tū (thou)
3. puer (the boy)
4. nōs (we)
5. vōs (ye)
6. puellae (the girls)

#### **Solution**

1. [ego] amō (I love)
2. [tu] amās (thou lovest *pl.*, you love *pl.*)
3. puer amat (the boy loves)
4. [nos] amāmus (we love)
5. [vos] amātis (ye love *pl.*, you love *pl.*)
6. puellae amant (the girls love)

## 11.1 Imperative Mood

The imperative mood conveys an order (e.g. Go!, Run!, Away Now!). The imperative mood is formed by simply using the stem of the verb. If the order is to a large group of people, or you are trying to show respect, you must use the -te suffix.

amō eum = I love him.

amā eum = Love him!.

amāte eum = Love (respectful, or plural) him!

currō casam = I run home.

curre casam = Run home!

currite casam = Run (respectful, or plural) home!

Regō prudente = I rule wisely.

Rege prudente = Rule wisely!

Regite prudente = Rule (respectful order) wisely!

### 11.1.1 Exercises

- *Translate Latin verbs:*

**Excercise: Translate**

Translate the following verbs:

1. portāmus • regunt • monēs • estis • auditis • monent • regō • portās • sunt

**Solution**

1. we carry • they rule • thou warnest • ye are • ye hear • they warn • I rule •  
you carry • they are

- *Translate sentences into Latin:*

**Excercise: Translate**

Translate Into Latin:

1. I carry my book.
2. Thou kill not.
3. They hear music.

**Solution**

1. Meum lībrum portō.
2. Interfīcis nōn.
3. Mūsicam audiunt.



## 12 Adverbs & Prepositions

### 12.1 Comparatives and Superlatives of Adjectives (Comparativa et superlativa adjectivorum)

| Lesson Vocabulary   |                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Latin               | English                     |
| fortis, forte       | strong, brave               |
| vir                 | man                         |
| long-us, -a, -um    | long                        |
| ingeniosus, -a, -um | clever, talented            |
| denarius, -i, m.    | denarius (unit of currency) |
| soror, sororis, f.  | sister                      |
| quam                | than                        |
| habet               | he/she has                  |

There are three types of adjectives: Positive (the 'normal' adjective, eg. the brave man: fortis vir), Comparative (eg. the braver man, or the rather brave man: fortior vir) and Superlative (eg. the bravest man, or the very brave man: fortissimus vir). Comparatives and superlatives of adjectives are usually formed by appending the suffix -ior (genitive is -ioris) for comparatives and -issimus for superlatives. All comparatives are declined like third declension nouns while superlatives are declined like second declension nouns, and thus must match the gender of the noun the superlative modifies. Often stem changes occur when appending these suffixes.

Adjective: longus (long)

|        |         |             |
|--------|---------|-------------|
| longus | longior | longissimus |
| long   | longer  | longest     |

#### 12.1.1 Irregular Adjectives

Fortunately, there are only a few irregular adjectives.

Irregular Adjectives

| Meaning      | Positive | Comparative              | Superlative               |
|--------------|----------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| good         | bonus    | melior ( <i>better</i> ) | optimus ( <i>best</i> )   |
| bad          | malus    | peior ( <i>worse</i> )   | pessimus ( <i>worst</i> ) |
| large, great | magnus   | maior                    | maximus                   |
| small        | parvus   | minor                    | minimus                   |
| many         | multus   | plus                     | plurimus                  |

**Examples:**

| Latin   | English  |
|---|--|
| Marcus est fortior quam Publius   | Marcus is stronger than Publius                      |
| Publius ingeniosior est quam Marcus   | Publius is more clever than Marcus                   |
| Marcus plures denarios habet quam Publius   | Marcus has more denariuses <sup>1</sup> than Publius |
| Publius plures sorores habet quam Marcus  | Publius has more sisters than Marcus                 |
| 1: We won't say "Marcus has more money" ( <i>pecunia</i> ) since plus in the singular takes the genitive case, which will not be covered for a few more lessons |  |

## 12.2 Adverbs

Adverbs are formed usually by replacing the suffix appended to the stem with the -e, or -i and sometimes -um. Adverbs modify the verb in the clause that contains the adverb. The adverb may be placed anywhere with the clause. Adverbs may be of positive, comparative and superlative form. Unlike adjectives and substantives, adverbs do not have declension or gender. And thus they are referred to as being 'indeclinable.' Following suffices are appended to form the comparative and superlative forms of adverbs: -ius for comparatives and -issime for superlative.

### 12.2.1 Example

Adverbs

fortiter

bravely

fortius

more bravely

fortissime

most bravely

Irregular adjectives form adverbs regularly from the adjective forms.

For example:

- melior (better) -> melius
- maximus (greatest) -> maxime

Some adverbs do not come from adjectives but rather exist on their own:

- diu (for a long time) -> diutius, diutissime
- saepe (often) -> saepius, saepissime

### 12.2.2 Exercise 1

**Excercise: Answer**

1. What is the comparative adverbial form of sol-us, sol-a, sol-um (alone)?

2. What is the positive adverbial form of laetus? (happy)
3. What is the positive adjectival form of irātior? (angrier)
4. What is the positive adverbial form of certus? (certain)
5. What is the superlative adjectival form of certus?
6. What is the superlative adverbial form of certe?
7. What is the superlative adjectival form of male?
8. What is the superlative adverbial form of malus?
9. What is the comparative adjectival form of dēsertus? (deserted)

### Solution

1. Solius
2. Laete
3. Irātus
4. Certe
5. Certissimus
6. Certissime
7. Pessimus
8. Pessime
9. Dēsertior

## 12.3 Conjunctions

Conjunctions are indeclinable particles that join clauses together to form sentences. Examples of forms of conjunctions in English are: and, but and so. Conjunctions are either coordinating (joining two main clauses) or subordinating (joining a subclause to a main clause).

### List of Common Conjunctions

#### Coordinating Conjunctions

|   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| atque                                       | and               |
| aut   | or                |
| aut...aut^                                  | either...or       |
| enim (usually placed second in sentence)    | for               |
| ergo  | and so, therefore |
| et  | and               |
| et...et^                                    | both...and        |
| igitur                                      | therefore         |
| itaque                                      | and so            |
| nam   | for               |
| nec/necque                                  | and not, nor      |
| nec/necque...nec/necque^                    | neither...nor     |
| -que*                                       | and               |
| sed   | but               |
| tamen (usually placed second in a sentence) | however           |

#### Subordinating Conjunctions

|     |      |
|-----|------|
| cum | when |
|-----|------|



|         |                |
|---------|----------------|
| ante    | before         |
| circum  | around         |
| contra  | against        |
| extra   | outside        |
| in*     | into           |
| inter   | between, among |
| per     | through        |
| post    | after          |
| prope   | near           |
| propter | because of     |
| super   | above          |
| trans   | across         |

#### Prepositions Taking The Ablative Case

|        |                   |
|--------|-------------------|
| a/ab** | from              |
| cum    | with              |
| de     | about, down from  |
| e/ex** | out of            |
| in*    | in                |
| pro    | for, on behalf of |
| sine   | without           |
| sub    | under             |

\*notice the two different meanings of *in* depending on the case

\*\* Just like a/an in English, the form with a consonant is used when the following word begins with a vowel

| Ablative case forms for nouns and adjectives |                            |                                |                                   |                          |
|--|----------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Nominative singular                          | <b>puell-a</b> (1st decl.) | <b>domin-us</b> (2nd decl. m.) | <b>triclini-um</b> (2nd decl. n.) | <b>canis</b> (3rd decl.) |
| Ablative singular                            | <b>puell-ā</b>             | <b>domin-o</b>                 | <b>tricilin-o</b>                 | <b>can-e</b>             |
| Ablative plural                              | <b>puell-is</b>            | <b>domin-is</b>                | <b>triclini-is</b>                | <b>can-ibus</b>          |

### 12.4.1 Exercise 3

| Latin                 | English               |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>ero</b>            | <b>I will be</b>      |
| <b>eris</b>           | <b>You will be</b>    |
| <b>erit</b>           | <b>He/she will be</b> |
| <b>erimus</b>         | <b>We will be</b>     |
| <b>eritis</b>         | <b>You will be</b>    |
| <b>erunt</b>          | <b>They will be</b>   |
| <b>dives, divitis</b> | <b>wealthy</b>        |
| <b>aedificium, -i</b> | <b>building</b>       |
| <b>anima, -ae</b>     | <b>mind, soul</b>     |
| <b>venit</b>          | <b>he/she comes</b>   |



Translate the following sentences:

1. eo domum (Latin omits 'ad' with 'domus,' specific city names, and small islands; e.g. Eunt Romam = They go [to] Rome.)
2. cum bona fortuna ero dives!
3. circum agrum est aedificium cum atrio
4. tu non es vir sine animis.
5. familia venit cum amore.

## 12.5 List of Frequent Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions in Latin

Taken from <http://www.georgetown.edu/faculty/irvinem/classics203/resources/latin.lex>

- atque, ac (conj): and [also], and; atque is used before consonants, ac before vowels
- ad modum: adv. very, quite; fully; + neg. = at all
- ad huc/adhuc: thus far, as yet, still, in addition, in the future
- aliquam: in some degree
- aliqui -qua -quod: some, any
- aliquis -qua -quid: someone, something; some, any
- aliquando: at times, sometimes; once, formerly
- aliquoties: several times, at different times
- at (form of ad = in addition to): but (intro startling transitions)
- atque: and as well, even, together with, in everything;
- atque...atque, both...and
- atqui: rather, however, but at any rate, but for all that (transition in arg.)
- aut: or, at least, or else; aut...aut: either...or
- autem: but, on the other hand, however
- coram: adv. and prep. in the presence of, before
- dehinc: adv. while, from here, from now, henceforth; then, next
- deinde: adv. from there; then, afterwards; secondly, next (in order), in the second (next) place
- demum: adv. at last, finally, not till then; precisely, exactly, just, in fact, certainly, to be sure; modo demum: only now, just now.
- denique: adv. finally
- donec: while, as long as, until
- dum: conj. while, now; so long as, provided that, if only; until
- enim: (conj) namely, indeed, certainly, in fact, for, because
- eo quod: because
- etenim: (conj) and indeed, for, as a matter of fact
- etiam: also, besides; even, actually; (time) still
- etsi: (conj.) though, although, and yet
- fas (est): indecl. (it is) right, proper
- huc: here, to this place; so far, for this purpose
- ibi: there, then, therein, on that occasion
- idcirco: for that reason, on that account, therefore

- ideo: therefore, for this reason
- illuc: (adv.) (to) there; to that; to him/her
- immo: (adv.) or rather; indeed; no, yes (emphasis)
- interdum: occasionally, sometimes, now and then
- inde: from there, from that source, then, after; from then
- iuxta: (adv) near by, alike, equally; (prep) close to, right after, near to, beside.
  - iuxta (7th-15th c.): according to
  - iuxta aliquid: to some extent
- ita: thus, so, in this way; ita...ut: just as, so...that
  - ita...quomodo: just as
- licet: all right; (with dat + inf) it is right for someone to; (conj) although, even if
- modo: only, just now
- necnon: also, moreover, certainly, besides
- nempe: to be sure, of course
- non numquam: sometimes
- nondum: not yet
- nonnullus -a -um: some, several
- nuper: recently, lately
- nusquam: nowhere
- ob: before, in front of; on account of, because of; for the sake of; instead of; in proportion to
  - ob rem: to the purpose, usefully
  - quam ob rem: wherefore, accordingly
- olim: once; of old; one day
- praeterea: besides, moreover; hereafter
- postea: afterwards
- postmodum: afterwards; presently
- procul: far off
- proinde: adv. consequently, therefore; just as
- propterea: for that reason, therefore
- prorsus/prorsum: (adv.) forwards; absolutely; in short
- prout: (conj) according as
- qua: (adv) where, as far as, how; qua..qua: partly...partly
- qualibet: anywhere, any way, as you please
- qualis -e: what sort of, what kind of, such as, as
- qualiter: adv. how, as, just as
- quam: (adv) how, how much; as, very
- quamdiu: as long as; while; inasmuch as
- quamquam: although
- quamvis: (adv) however; (conj) although
- quando: when (after nisi, ne) ever; (conj) when, since, because
- quandoque: (adv) at some time; (conj) whenever, as often as, since
- quantum: (adv) as much as, as far as, so much as, to what extent
- quantus: how great, how much
  - in quantum: to what extent
  - quanto: for how much
- quantum ad: in terms of, as far as x is concerned, with respect to
- quapropter: wherefore

- quare: by what means, how; why, wherefore
- quasi: as if, as though
- quatenus: adv.(inter.) how far, how long? (rel.) as far as, in so far as, since
- quemadmodum: (adv) in what way, how; (conj) as, just as
- quicquam: anything
- quicumque quae- quod-: whoever, whatever; all that, any whatever
- quidam quae- quid-: a certain one, someone, a kind of
- quidem: indeed, in fact
- quippe: adv. certainly, of course; conj.(explaining) for in fact, because, since
- quisquam quid-: anyone, anything
- quisque quidque: each, each one, every
- quisquis, quidquid: whoever, whatever; all
- quo: where, what for, to what end
- quoad: as to, with respect to
- quocumque: wither so ever, how so ever
- quod: (conj) because, as far as, in so far as, as for the fact that, in that, that
  - quod si: but if
- quodamodo: in a way
- quomodo: how, in what way; (rel) as, just as
- quondam: once, sometimes, formerly
- quoniam: because, since, seeing that, now that
- quoque: also, too
- quot: how many; (conj) as many
- quotiens: how often (rel) as often as
- rursus: again, in turn
- recte: rightly, correctly
- rursum: again
- sane: reasonably, sensibly; certainly, doubtless, truly; of course; c. neg. = really, at all; to be sure, however
- scilicet: adv. evidently, naturally, of course; (as explan. particle:) namely, that is to say, in other words
- semel: once
- seu: and
- simul: at the same time; together; likewise
- sin: but if
- siquidem: if in fact; if only, if indeed; since indeed, since that
- talis -e: adj. such, of such a kind, the following
- taliter: in such a manner, so
- tam: so, so greatly; tam...quam: so...as, much...as well as
- tamen: yet, nevertheless, still
- tamquam: as, just as; (conj) as if, just as if
- tandem: at last, finally
- tantum: (adv) so much, so greatly; to such a degree; so far; only
- tantus -a -um (adj): of such (a size); so great, so much
- tot: as many, so many
- tunc: (adv) then, just the; thereupon, accordingly, consequently
- ubicumque: wherever, everywhere
- unde: whence, from where; wherefore; this being the case

- usque: as far as, all the way, continually, straight on, up to; until
- ut...ita: while...nevertheless
- uterque -raque -rumque: both, each (of two)
- utinam: would that, if only
- utique: anyhow, at least, at any rate
- utpote: as, in as much as
- utrum: (conj) either, whether
- velut: as, just as, as it were, as though
- verumtamen: but yet, nevertheless
- vero (conj): but, truly
- videlicet: clearly, evidently; namely

Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>



# 13 The Accusative Case

## 13.1 Exercises

**Exercise: Give the accusative singular.**

Give the accusative singular for:

1. lud-us
2. magn-us
3. triclini-um
4. bell-um
5. puell-a
6. serv-us
7. ager

**Solution**

1. lud**um**
2. magn**um**
3. triclini**um**
4. bell**um**
5. puell**am**
6. serv**um**
7. agr**um**

**Exercise: Give the accusative plural.**

Give the accusative plural for:

1. lud-us
2. magn-us
3. triclini-um
4. bell-um
5. puell-a
6. serv-us
7. ager

**Solution**

1. ludos
2. magnos
3. triclinia
4. bella
5. puellas

6. servos
7. agros

**Exercise: Give the nominative singular.**

Give the nominative singular for:

1. bon-ī
2. bell-a
3. triclini-a
4. puell-am
5. agr-ōs
6. serv-ōs
7. puell-ae

**Solution**

1. bonus
2. bellum
3. triclinium
4. puella
5. ager
6. servus
7. puella

| Lesson Vocabulary     |              |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| Latin                 | English      |
| vendit                | he/she sells |
| videt                 | he/she sees  |
| amat                  | he/she loves |
| cist-a -ae (f.)       | box          |
| ferox, ferocis (m/f.) | wild         |
| ager (m.)             | field        |
| bell-um (n.)          | war          |
| serv-us (m.)          | slave        |

## 13.2 Grammar: The Accusative

As you learned in the last lesson, the verb 'esse' (to be) usually takes the nominative case, because then the word after it is a complement. Most other verbs take the 'accusative' case.

In a sentence, the accusative is the "what" - in English grammar, this is known as the direct object.

**For example:** The girl sells the box.

What did the girl sell? The box. Thus, box is the direct object, and when we translate it into Latin:

**Example**

|                     |            |        |            |
|---------------------|------------|--------|------------|
| <i>English:</i>     | The girl   | sells  | the box.   |
| <i>Latin:</i>       | Puella     | vendit | cistam.    |
| <i>Explanation:</i> | NOMINATIVE | VERB   | ACCUSATIVE |

Cistam, then, is in the accusative, because it is the direct object.

Again, when an adjective describes a noun in the accusative case, the adjective must agree in number, case, and gender.

**Example**

|                     |            |        |                         |                      |
|---------------------|------------|--------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>English:</i>     | The girl   | sells  | the big                 | box.                 |
| <i>Latin:</i>       | Puella     | vendit | magnam                  | cistam.              |
| <i>Explanation:</i> | NOMINATIVE | VERB   | ADJECTIVE<br>ACCUSATIVE | NOUN AC-<br>CUSATIVE |

Because Latin uses cases to mark the subject and the object of a sentence, word order does not matter. Consider:

|                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| puer puellam videt  | The boy sees the girl |
| puerum puella videt | The girl sees the boy |
| puellam puer videt  | The boy sees the girl |
| puella puerum videt | The girl sees the boy |

### 13.3 Examples of Adjectives Agreeing with the Nominative and Accusative Case



**Explanation-** The *good* boy loves the *wild* dog.

*Latin:*

puer  
[The] boy

**bonus**  
**good**

amat  
[he] loves

canem (acc)  
[the] dog

**ferocem** (acc).  
**wild.**

*Bonus*, a first and second declension adjective, is masculine, nominative, and singular to agree with *puer*, the word it is describing.

*Ferocem*, a third declension adjective, is masculine, accusative, and singular to agree with *canem*. *Canem* is accusative because it is the object of *amat*.

Here is an example of plural adjectives:

**Explanation-** The *good* boys love the *wild* dogs.

*Latin:* Pueri (plur)  
*English:* [The] boys

**boni** (plur)  
**good**

amant (plur)  
[they] love

canes (plur, acc)  
[the] dogs

**feroces** (plur, acc).  
**wild.**

The words *bonus* and *ferocem* become *boni* and *feroces* to agree with the plurals *pueri* and *canes*.

However, if a girl (*puella*<sup>1</sup>) happened to love that boy:

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/puella%23Latin>

**Explanation-** The *good* girl loves the *good* boy.

*Latin:* Puella  
*English:* [The] girl

**bona**  
**good**

amat  
[she] loves

puerum (acc)  
[the] boy

**bonum** (acc).  
**good.**

*Bonus* must become *bona* in order to modify *puella*, which is feminine.

Finally, if the girl isn't good, but rather wild:

**Explanation-** The *wild* girl loves the *good* boy.

*Latin:* Puella  
*English:* [The] girl

**ferox**  
**wild**

amat  
[she] loves

puerum (acc)  
[the] boy

**bonum** (acc).  
**good.**

Even though *puella* is first declension, *ferox* remains third declension. In the same way, a good lion would be *bonus leo*.

### 13.4 Exercise 3

Determine whether the adjective agrees with the substantive in all three categories: case, gender, number.

#### Questions:

1. magn-us agr-ōs
2. magn-a puella
3. poet-a\* bon-us
4. magn-um serv-um
5. poet-ae\* magn-ae
6. bell-a magn-a

#### Does it Agree?

- True/False  
True/False  
True/False  
True/False  
True/False  
True/False

\* *Nota bene*: Poeta (meaning poet) is a masculine noun, even though it ends in **-a**.

#### Exercise: Answer

See table above. Determine whether the adjective (magnus, bonus..) agrees with the substantives (ager, puella, poeta) in both case (nominative, accusative...), gender (masculine, female and neuter) and number (singular and plural).

#### Solution

1. **False.** *Magnus* doesn't agree with *agrōs*; in number and case.  
*Magnus*: Masculine, singular, nominative.  
*Agrōs*: Masculine, plural, accusative.
2. **True.** *Magna* agrees with *puella*.  
*Magna*: Feminine, singular, nominative.  
*Puella*: Feminine, singular, nominative.
3. **True.** *Bonus* agrees with *poeta*.  
*Bonus*: Masculine, singular, nominative.  
*Poeta*: Masculine, singular, nominative.
4. **True.** *Magnum* agrees with *servum*.  
*Magnum*: Neuter, singular, nominative.  
*Servum*: Neuter, singular, nominative.
5. **False.** *Magnae* doesn't agree with *poetae*; in gender.  
*Magnae*: Feminine, plural, nominative.  
*Poetae*: Masculine, plural, nominative.
6. **True.** *Bella* agrees with *magna*.  
*Bella*: Neuter, plural, nominative.  
*Magna*: Neuter, plural, nominative.

### 13.5 Grammar: The Use of the Accusative



| Lesson Vocabulary  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| Latin  | English             |
| curri-t  | he/she runs         |
| porta-t  | he/she carries      |
| specta-t   | he/she watches      |
| da-t   | he/she gives        |
| fuisse   | to have been        |
| fuī  | I have been         |
| fuiſtī   | you have been       |
| (puer) fuit  | (the boy) has been  |
| fuimus   | we have been        |
| fuiſtis  | you (pl.) have been |
| fuērunt  | they have been      |
| Nota Bene: 'fuisse' and all the forms of it, the past tense of 'esse', behaves exactly like the present tense. |                     |

The newly introduced verbs, ama-t, curri-t, and porta-t take the accusative as the 'object'. Unless specified, any verb you look up in the dictionary will take the accusative, not the nominative. This means that they are **transitive verbs**, verbs that happen to someone or something, e.g.:

I heal you. (*acc.*)  
 You make my day. (*acc.*)  
 She hit your arm. (*acc.*)

In the examples above, the **bold** words are the subject of the sentence clause. Because something happens "to" them, they can't be in nominative.

## 13.6 Grammatical Explanation Using English Sentences

### Grammatical Explanation 1

*English:*                      The boy                      hits                      the car.  
*Explanation:*                NOMINATIVE                VERB                ACCUSATIVE

### Grammatical Explanation 2

*English:*                      The girl                      hugs                      the boy.  
*Explanation:*                NOMINATIVE                VERB                ACCUSATIVE

### Grammatical Explanation 3

*English:*                      He who                      flees,                      deserves                      the guillotine.  
*Explanation:*                NOMINATIVE                VERB                VERB                ACCUSATIVE

### 13.6.1 Exercise 4: Find the Nominative and Accusative

**Exercise: Find the Nominative and Accusative (if present) in each the sentence.**

Find the Nominative and Accusative (if present) in each the sentence.

1. The boy is good.
2. The girl kisses the boy.
3. The boy gives the book.
4. The child watches the TV.
5. Whom it concerns.
6. To the kitchen I run
7. I eat the pizza.

#### Solution

1. The boy {nom} is good {nom}.  
*Puer {nom} est bonus {nom}.*
2. The girl {nom} kisses the boy {acc}.  
*Puella {nom} puerum {acc} basiat.*
3. The boy {nom} gives the book {acc}.  
*Puer {nom} librum {acc} dat.*
4. The child {nom} watches the TV {acc}.  
*Infans {nom} televisorium {acc} videt.*
5. Whom {acc} it {nom} concerns.  
*???*
6. To the kitchen {acc} I {nom} run.  
*Ad culinam {acc} [ego {nom}] curro.*
7. I {nom} eat the pizza {acc}.  
*Pittam {acc} [ego {nom}] edo.*

**Exercise: In the following sentences, identify the accusative and nominative. Then translate.**

In the following sentences, identify the accusative and nominative. Then translate.

1. Puer est bonus.
2. Puella puerum amat..
3. Puer cistam portat.
4. Filius virum spectat.
5. Ad culinam currit.

#### Solution

1. Puer {nom} est bonus {nom}.  
The boy {nom} is good {nom}.
2. Puella {nom} puerum {acc} amat.  
The girl {nom} loves the boy {acc}.
3. Puer {nom} cistam {acc} portat.  
The boy {nom} carries the box {acc}.

4. Filius {nom} virum {acc} spectat.  
The son {nom} watched the husband {acc}.
5. Ad culinam {acc} currit.  
To the kitchen {acc} [he {nom}] runs.

Category:Latin<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>2</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>

# 14 Pronouns

## 14.1 Personal Pronouns in English

| Lesson Vocabulary |              |
|-------------------|--------------|
| Latin             | English      |
| cibus             | food         |
| laborat           | he/she works |

Pronouns are nouns which are used instead of another noun ('pro', in place of 'noun', noun.)

There are three categories of pronouns which are divided up into persons: 1st, 2nd, and 3rd. In addition, pronouns can be singular or plural. They are declined like all other nouns.

| Person | Singular  | Plural    |
|--------|-----------|-----------|
| 1st    | I         | We        |
| 2nd    | You, Thou | You (all) |
| 3rd    | He/She/It | They      |

## 14.2 Personal Pronouns in Latin

### 14.2.1 1st/2nd Person Pronouns

**Table of Personal Pronouns in all of their cases: I, thou, we, ye**

Note: Thou is the archaic singular of the archaic plural ye - useful for distinguishing you (singular) from you (plural)

|            | Singular   |         |            | Plural           |                 |            |
|------------|------------|---------|------------|------------------|-----------------|------------|
| Case       | 1st Person |         | 2nd Person | 1st Person       |                 | 2nd Person |
| Nominative | ego        | I       | tū         | nōs              | we              | vōs        |
| Genitive   | meī        | of me   | tuī        | nostri(nostri)us | vestri(vestrum) | of you     |
| Dative     | mihi       | to me   | tibi       | nōbīs            | to us           | to/for you |
| Accusative | mē         | me      | tē         | nōs              | us              | you        |
| Ablative   | mē         | from me | tē         | nōbīs            | from us         | from you   |

Nota Bene: the genitive is used in certain phrases like:

1. memor nostrī, mindful of us
2. paucī vestrum, a few of you.

For the possessive uses (my sister, your bicycle), Latin does not use the genitive, but the possessive adjectives:

| Latin                   | English              |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| meus, mea, meum         | my                   |
| tuus, tua, tuum         | thy                  |
| suus, sua, sum          | his/hers, its, their |
| noster, nostra, nostrum | our                  |
| vester, vestra, vestrum | your                 |
| Pater noster            | Our father           |

### 14.2.2 3rd Person Pronouns

Technically, 3rd person pronouns do not exist in Latin as they do in English. However, they do have equivalents.

Adjectives modify nouns and take the gender of the noun which they modify. However, adjectives do not necessarily need a substantive present in the sentence to modify. The substantive can be presumed. In this way, '3rd person' pronouns are formed.

#### Example 1

Take the masculine form of the adjective 'ille'. Literally it means 'That (masculine) thing.' However one could take it for simply meaning 'he', depending on the context. Similarly, the pronoun 'iste' means 'this (masc.) thing'. Iste and ille are declined in exactly the same way.

If no substantive is provided assume words like these: 'man', 'woman', 'thing', 'idea', 'concept', 'reason' etc. Let context be your guide.

### 14.2.3 Common Adjectives Used as 3rd Person Pronouns In Latin

#### Declension of Ille (that)

| Declension of <i>ille</i> (that): Singular |           |          |        |                    |           |        |
|--|-----------|----------|--------|--------------------|-----------|--------|
|  | Latin     |          |        | English            |           |        |
|  | Masculine | Feminine | Neuter | Masculine          | Feminine  | Neuter |
| <b>Nominative</b>                          | ille      | illa     | illud  | he                 | she       | it     |
| <b>Genitive</b>                            | illius    | illius   | illius | his                | her, hers | its    |
| <b>Dative</b>                              | illī      | illī     | illī   | to him             | to her    | to it  |
| <b>Accusative</b>                          | illum     | illam    | illud  | him                | her       | it     |
| <b>Ablative</b>                            | illō      | illā     | illō   | by, with, from him | her       | it     |

| Declension of <i>ille</i> (that): Plural |           |          |         |                            |  |
|--|-----------|----------|---------|----------------------------|--|
|  | Latin     |          |         | English                    |  |
|  | Masculine | Feminine | Neuter  |                            |  |
| Nominative                               | illī      | illae    | illa    | they, those                |  |
| Genitive                                 | illōrum   | illārum  | illōrum | their, theirs, of those    |  |
| Dative                                   | illīs     | illīs    | illīs   | to them, to those          |  |
| Accusative                               | illōs     | illās    | illa    | them, those                |  |
| Ablative                                 | illīs     | illis    | illīs   | by, with, from them, those |  |



Ille is often used as a kind of pronoun. In situations with multiple phrases or sentences, however, it is syntactically different from is, ea, id (see below).

For example: "Canis puero cibum dat. Is laborat in agro." means "The dog gives food to the boy. The dog works in the field".

However: "Canis puero cibum dat. Ille laborat in agro." means "The dog gives food to the boy. The boy works in the field".

Thus, ille, unlike the other pronouns makes a previous object into the subject (and vice versa).

#### Examples of the Usage of Ille:

| Latin                   | English   |
|-------------------------|---|
| Ille est dominus.       | He is the master. (ille as pronoun)                 |
| Ille dominus est malus. | That master is bad. (ille as adjective)             |
| Illam videt             | He sees her. (or 'she sees her' - illam as pronoun) |
| Illam puellam videt     | He (or she) sees that girl (illam as adjective).    |

#### Declension of Is, ea, id: (personal pronouns w/ translations)

| Singular   |       |  |  |         |             |  |             |  |            |
|------------|-------|--|--|---------|-------------|--|-------------|--|------------|
| Case       | Latin |  |  | English |             |  |             |  |            |
|            | M     |  |  | N       |             |  | F           |  | N          |
| Nominative | is    |  |  | id      | he          |  | she         |  | it         |
| Genitive   | eius  |  |  |         | his         |  | her, hers   |  | its        |
| Dative     | eī    |  |  |         | to him      |  | to her      |  | to it      |
| Accusative | eum   |  |  |         | him         |  | her         |  | it         |
| Ablative   | eō    |  |  |         | by/with him |  | by/with her |  | by/with it |

| Plural     |          |       |         |                            |   |   |
|------------|----------|-------|---------|----------------------------|---|---|
| Case       | Latin    |       | English |                            |   |   |
|            | M        | F     | N       | M                          | F | N |
| Nominative | ei       | eae   | ea      | they, those                |   |   |
| Genitive   | eōrum    | eārum | eōrum   | their, theirs, of those    |   |   |
| Dative     | eīs, iīs |       |         | to them, to those          |   |   |
| Accusative | eōs      | eās   | ea      | them, those                |   |   |
| Ablative   | eīs, iīs |       |         | by, with, from them, those |   |   |

Like ille, is can be used as a form of a pronoun.

### Examples of the Usage of Is

| Latin                 | English  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Is est dominus.       | He is the master. ("is" as pronoun)                |
| Is dominus est malus. | That master is bad. ("is" as adjective)            |
| Eam videt.            | He sees her. (or 'she sees her', "eam" as pronoun) |
| Eam puellam videt.    | He (or she) sees that girl. ("eam" as adjective)   |

**Declension of the Relative pronoun qui, quae, quod:** (meaning who, which, he)

| Singular   |   |       |   |      |   |      |                            |   |          |
|------------|---|-------|---|------|---|------|----------------------------|---|----------|
|            | M |       | F |      | N |      | M                          | F | N        |
| Nominative |   | quī   |   | quae |   | quod | who                        |   | which    |
| Genitive   |   | cuius |   |      |   |      | whose                      |   | of which |
| Dative     |   | cui   |   |      |   |      | to whom                    |   | to which |
| Accusative |   | quem  |   | quam |   | quod | whom                       |   | which    |
| Ablative   |   | quō   |   | quā  |   | quō  | by, with, from whom, which |   |          |

| Plural     |   |        |        |        |   |                      |   |          |  |  |  |
|------------|---|--------|--------|--------|---|----------------------|---|----------|--|--|--|
|            | M |        | F      | N      | M |                      | F | N        |  |  |  |
| Nominative |   | quī    | quae   | quae   |   | who                  |   | which    |  |  |  |
| Genitive   |   | quorum | quarum | quorum |   | whose                |   | of which |  |  |  |
| Dative     |   | quibus |        |        |   | to whom              |   | to which |  |  |  |
| Accusative |   | quōs   | quās   | quae   |   | whom                 |   | which    |  |  |  |
| Ablative   |   | quibus |        |        |   | by, with, from whom, |   | which    |  |  |  |

Notice that the same forms are used to ask a question, with the following exceptions:

|            | M    | F    | N    |                   |
|------------|------|------|------|-------------------|
| Nominative | quis |      | quid | who, which, what  |
| Accusative | quem | quam | quid | whom, which, what |

### Uses of the Relative Pronoun

The relative pronoun takes on the case depending on the function it serves in the relative clause. For example, in the sentence "He sees the man who has a slave," "who" is translated as nominative because it is the subject of the clause "who has a slave." The antecedent (noun to which the pronoun refers) is usually before the relative clause.

### Examples of the Usage of the Relative Pronoun

1. *Virum videt<sup>1</sup> (he/she sees) **qui** servum<sup>2</sup> (servant) habet<sup>3</sup> (he/she has).*  
He sees the man **who** has a slave
2. ***Ille** est vir<sup>4</sup> **cujus** servus est malus<sup>5</sup>.*  
**That's** the man whose slave is bad.
3. *Quis **eum**<sup>6</sup> videt?*  
Who sees **him**?

### Declension of hic, haec, hoc (meaning this)

| Singular   |           |        |        |      |
|------------|-----------|--------|--------|------|
|            | Masculine | Femine | Neuter |      |
| Nominative | hic       | haec   | hoc    | this |
| Genitive   | huius     |        |        |      |
| Dative     | huic      |        |        |      |
| Accusative | hunc      | hanc   | hoc    |      |
| Ablative   | hōc       | hāc    | hōc    |      |

| Plural     |           |        |        |       |
|------------|-----------|--------|--------|-------|
|            | Masculine | Femine | Neuter |       |
| Nominative | hī        | hae    | haec   | these |
| Genitive   | hōrum     | hārum  | hōrum  |       |
| Dative     | hīs       |        |        |       |

- 1 <http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/videre%23Latin>
- 2 <http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/servus%23Latin>
- 3 <http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/habere%23Latin>
- 4 <http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/vir%23Latin>
- 5 <http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/malus%23Latin>
- 6 <http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/is%23Latin>

| Plural     |           |        |        |  |
|------------|-----------|--------|--------|--|
|            | Masculine | Femine | Neuter |  |
| Accusative | hōs       | hās    | haec   |  |
| Ablative   | hīs       |        |        |  |

N.B. Hic as an adverb that means 'here'. N.B. Hic can also be used as a pronoun.

### Example of the Usage of Hic

| Latin                            | English                           |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Hic servus, non ille, est malus. | This slave, not that one, is bad. |

## 14.3 Exercises

Give a suitable LATIN translation for the following:

1. To him
2. To her
3. For her
4. For him
5. To it
6. I
7. You
8. Ye
9. of You
10. of him
11. We
12. Thou
13. of thee
14. in him
15. in her

Give a suitable ENGLISH translation for the following:

1. Meus
2. Meī
3. Ille
4. Illud
5. Huic
6. Hī
7. Hoc
8. Nōs
9. Nostrī
10. Vōs
11. Vestrum

Category:Latin<sup>7</sup>

<sup>7</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>





## 15 Chapter 1 Verse



## 16 Latin I prose

| Lesson Vocabulary  |  |
|--|--|
| Latin  | English  |
| fulgeo, -ere   | to shine   |
| aperio, -ire   | to open  |
| dormio, -ire   | to sleep   |
| habeo, -ere  | to have  |
| semper   | always   |
| tempto, -are   | to try   |
| dico, -ere   | to speak, say  |
| femina   | woman  |
| facio, -ere  | to make  |
| ecce!  | look!  |
| velle:<br>volo<br>vis<br>vult<br>volumus<br>vultis<br>volunt | to wish, want:<br>I want<br>you want<br>he/she wants<br>we want<br>you want<br>they want |
| turba  | crowd  |
| attonitus  | astonished   |
| tantus, -a, -um  | so great   |
| susurro, -are  | to whisper   |
| patefacio, -ere  | to open, disclose  |
| rideo, -ere  | to laugh   |

The following is a nice easy short story for the Latin novice:

### 16.0.1 Lucius ad forum it

Sol fulget. Lucius oculos aperit. Videt uxorem suam, Octaviam. Octavia dormit. Ergo, Lucius ad forum it.

Lucius multos amicos habet. Unus de amicis Claudius est. Claudius semper in foro est. Claudius temptat dicere cum feminis, quod Claudius multas feminas amat. Multae feminae, tamen, Claudium non amant.

Lucius ad forum ambulat. Multos Romanos videt. Unus Romanorum ad cives orationem facit. Est Claudius!

"Ecce! Ecce!" dicit Lucius. Lucius vult dicere cum amico. Claudius, tamen, dicit ad turbam.

"Amicus meus, Lucius" dicit, "hominem necavit."<sup>A</sup>

Lucius anxius respondet, "Quid dicis, amice?"

Claudius est attonitus. Dicit, "Te non video, mi Luci..."

Lucius respondet, "hominem non necavi! Cur tanta dicis?" Claudius sussurat, "Volo videri"<sup>B</sup> fortissimus, amice. Feminae te amant. Me dolet<sup>C</sup>."

Lucius omnia<sup>D</sup> turbae<sup>E</sup> patefacit.

Multae feminae ad Claudium misserimum rident. Mox, etiam Claudius ad se ridet.

- <sup>A</sup> *Necavit* is the perfect form of *necare*, meaning "he killed." For more, check out the next chapter.
- <sup>B</sup> *Videri* means "to appear," (or more literally, "to be seen") and is the passive infinitive of *video*. There is more on that in chapters 2-4.
- <sup>C</sup> *Me dolet* means "makes me suffer".
- <sup>D</sup> *Omnia* means "everything".
- <sup>E</sup> *turbae* is the dative case of "turba", meaning "to the crowd".

## 16.1 Chapter 2: Complicated Sentences

# 17 The Imperfect Tense

## 17.1 Imperfect Active Indicative

The imperfect is a construct like: **I was seeing**. In Latin it would look like this: **Videbam**.

English has a similar construct called progressive past. Actions seem incomplete, and so the imperfect label. For example, "I was running," "We were sailing," "They were calling." Note that 'to be' is always there. Latin, however, would sometimes use imperfect like simple past; accordingly, "We were sailing" could be translated as "We sailed." Other translations of imperfect can be used to/kept such as "We used to sail/We kept sailing."

Regardless of language, the concept of an imperfect is important. Imperfect is called imperfect for a reason - in Latin, the verb "perficere" means to finish/complete, which is what perfect is from. Thus, imperfect, in the grammatical sense, means not finished - that the action could be or could not be completed. Perfect instead means it has been finished - I saw. You have already seen, and it is now completed. I was seeing implies that the action is not yet completed.

The perfect tense, which we will learn later, is a more immediate reference to the past. The name, imperfect, helps you remember its use: in situations where you can't say when an event started or ended or happened, you must use the imperfect.

In situations where you can know when an event started or ended or happened, use the perfect.

You conjugate the imperfect tense this way: verb + ba + personal ending

The endings for imperfect are:

Sg. 1. **-bam** 2. **-bas** 3. **-bat** Pl. 1. **-bamus** 2. **-batis** 3. **-bant**

Note that the only thing we add are ba + the personal endings (the same as in the present tense) to the infinitive stem. This gives us the imperfect conjugation.

Note that in third and fourth conjugations, you will have to form it differently. There is \*no\* rule to explain this, it just is, although there are memorization techniques that can help.

venire is 4th conjugation and is formed like: veniebam veniebas veniebat veniebamus veniebatis veniebant

For third conjugation, an example used in some textbooks/study guides is: capere (to capture or seize)

capiebam capiebas capiebat capiebamus capiebatis capiebant

Note that it is easiest to think of what the endings -ere and -ire lack. The imperfect -ba + the personal ending, which we can call the imperfect conjugation, must be prefixed by ie.

| Lesson Vocabulary |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| Latin             | English            |
| amo, amare        | to love            |
| moneo, monere     | to warn            |
| vinco, vincere    | to win, defeat     |
| capio, capere     | to capture, seize  |
| pello, pellere    | to drive           |
| sedeo, sedere     | to sit             |
| lego, legere      | to read            |
| adsum, adesse     | to be present      |
| emo, emere        | to buy             |
| tristis, triste   | sad                |
| redeo, redire     | to return, go back |
| cena, -ae         | dinner             |
| paratus, -a, -um  | ready              |
| mater, matris     | mother             |
| paro, parare      | to prepare         |

A few examples:

**amabam** - I was loving (A-conjugation--1st) **monebatis** - You were warning [object/personage] (of something negative) (Pl.) (2nd Conjugation) **vinciebamus** - We were defeating (long I-conjugation--3rd conjugation) **capiebant** - They were catching (short I-conjugation--3rd conjugation) **pellebat** - She/he/it was propelling (drive something (not a vehicle), propel something) (consonantic conjugation)

(Wiki-reading tips: See discussion. Some of the above may be unclear, however the clarifying '--' and '/' indicate verification. We may not know what the original author intended, but we know what conjugations the examples are.)

## Conjugation in the Imperfect tense

|              | 1st      | 2nd       | 3rd       | mixed      | 4th        | Irregular |        |
|--------------|----------|-----------|-----------|------------|------------|-----------|--------|
| Infinitive:  | amare    | sedere    | legere    | capere     | venire     | ire       | esse   |
| Singular     |          |           |           |            |            |           |        |
| 1st per-son: | amabam   | sedebam   | legebam   | capiebam   | veniebam   | ibam      | eram   |
| 2nd per-son: | amabas   | sedebas   | legebas   | capiebas   | veniebas   | ibas      | eras   |
| 3rd per-son: | amabat   | sedebat   | legebat   | capiebat   | veniebat   | ibat      | erat   |
| Plural       |          |           |           |            |            |           |        |
| 1st per-son: | amabamus | sedebamus | legebamus | capiebamus | veniebamus | ibamus    | eramus |
| 2nd per-son: | amabatis | sedebatis | legebatis | capiebatis | veniebatis | ibatis    | eratis |
| 3rd per-son: | amabant  | sedebant  | legebant  | capiebant  | veniebant  | ibant     | erant  |



### 17.1.1 Exercises

Translate from Latin to English

1. dum sol fulgebat, puer ambulabat ad forum
2. in foro multus cibus aderat et femina cibum vendebat
3. puer cibum emere volebat sed satis pecuniae (*enough money*) non habebat
4. puer se vertit (*turned (lit. himself) around*) et tristis domum rediebat
5. sed ubi domum rediit (*returned*) cena parata erat quod mater semper cenam parat

## 18 The Genitive and Dative Cases

### 18.1 Noun Tables

|            | 1 <sup>st</sup> declension |                 | 2 <sup>nd</sup> declension |                 | -um (neuter)    |               |
|------------|----------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|
|            | <b>-a</b>                  | <b>SINGULAR</b> | <b>-us/er</b>              | <b>SINGULAR</b> | <b>SINGULAR</b> | <b>PLURAL</b> |
| nominative | puell-a                    | puell-ae        | serv-us/puer               | serv-ī          | bell-um         | bell-a        |
| genitive   | puell-ae                   | puell-ārum      | serv-ī                     | serv-um         | bell-ī          | bell-ōrum     |
| accusative | puell-am                   | puell-ās        | serv-um                    | serv-ō          | bell-um         | bell-a        |
| dative     | puell-ae                   | puell-īs        | serv-ō                     |                 | bell-ō          | bell-īs       |

## 18.2 The Genitive

The genitive case is a descriptive case. The genitive case describes the following features of the described noun:

- Possession e.g. The Dog of Marcus *or* Marcus's Dog (Canis Marcī)
- Origin e.g. Marcus of Rome (Marcus Romae)
- Relation e.g. A thing of beauty (Rēs pulchrae)
- Quantity e.g. A gallon of water
- Quality e.g. Day of wrath (Diēs irae)

Quite simply, a word in the genitive case is translated with the preposition "of". Note that Latin does not have a separate form for the possessive genitive (*Marcus's Dog* vs *The Dog of Marcus*), as does English. A word in the genitive case showing possession can be translated either way.

### 18.2.1 Latin Examples

|       |       |            |      |            |          |     |      |       |            |      |         |         |            |      |                |          |    |      |      |            |      |
|-------|-------|------------|------|------------|----------|-----|------|-------|------------|------|---------|---------|------------|------|----------------|----------|----|------|------|------------|------|
| Latin | canis | nominative | noun | puerī malī | genitive | est | verb | bonus | nominative | adj. | English | The dog | nominative | noun | of the bad boy | genitive | is | verb | good | nominative | adj. |
|-------|-------|------------|------|------------|----------|-----|------|-------|------------|------|---------|---------|------------|------|----------------|----------|----|------|------|------------|------|

|                    |                      |      |                    |                 |                    |
|--------------------|----------------------|------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| Latin              |                      |      | English            |                 |                    |
| canis              | puerōrum<br>malōrum  | est  | The dog            | of the bad boys | good               |
| nominative<br>noun | genitive<br>(plural) | verb | nominative<br>noun | genitive        | nominative<br>adj. |
|                    |                      |      |                    | verb            |                    |

### 18.2.2 Exercise 1

Indicate the word in the genitive:

1. Flavia's dog is good.
2. The man has his mother's good taste.
3. Māter Flāviae est domina.
4. The sword of justice is swift.

## 18.3 Agreeing with the Adjectives

When adjectives are used to describe nouns in the genitive case, they must have the same case, number, and gender as the noun to which it refers.

### 18.3.1 Example

**A road of beautiful Rome → Via Romae pulchrae.**

If we look at the bare necessities, namely nouns, in this phrase, then we get "road of Rome," which is translated as "via Romae." Now, let's look at the adjective: beautiful (*pulchra*). Its antecedent (the noun it modifies) is Rome. Since Rome is in the genitive case, *pulchra* also needs to be in the genitive case. Both are already feminine, so we don't need to change that.

To make *pulchra* in the genitive singular case, we replace the final "-a" with a "-ae," and we get *pulchrae*.

It's that simple.

## 18.4 The Dative

The dative case, also known as the indirect object case indicates:

- For whom, e.g., I made this car **for him**.
- To whom, e.g., I gave this car **to him**.

Latin does not distinguish between "to" or "for", though this is sometimes the case in English:

- I made this car **for him**. ↔ I made **him** this car.
- I gave this car **to him**. ↔ I gave **him** this car.

### 18.4.1 Example 1

|                 |      |            |              |            |
|-----------------|------|------------|--------------|------------|
| He              | made | the desk   | for          | his friend |
| nominative noun | verb | accusative | dative prep. | dative     |

'For' is the preposition indicating a dative. 'For' can be used in some other constructs. To determine whether it is dative, analyse the meaning of the sentence (see Example 3). Practice will enable you to quickly spot the case of a noun in the sentence without much effort.

### 18.4.2 Example 2

*He gave the book **to John**; He gave **to John** the book; or He gave **John** the book.*

This demonstrates how English can use prepositions to change word order and even 'presume' a certain preposition exists that has been left out, giving a dative construct.

### 18.4.3 Latin Examples



|       |                        |            |         |                       |            |
|-------|------------------------|------------|---------|-----------------------|------------|
| Latin | amīcō meō <sup>1</sup> | donum.     | English | my friend             | a gift.    |
| Donō  | dative noun/adj. pair  | accusative | I gave  | dative noun/adj. pair | accusative |
| verb  |                        |            | verb    |                       |            |

---

1 Note how the word "meus" become "meo" in order to agree with "amico".

|       |                   |            |            |                |
|-------|-------------------|------------|------------|----------------|
| Latin |                   |            |            |                |
| Feret | mihi <sup>2</sup> | stylum.    | English    | a pen.         |
| verb  | dative pronoun    | accusative | He brought | accusative     |
|       |                   |            | verb       |                |
|       |                   |            |            | dative pronoun |

2    Note that the pronouns have a dative case as well, which can be reviewed in the chapter on pronouns.

## 18.5 Exercise 2: Translate into English

| Latin                       | English                   |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| dō, dāre                    | to give                   |
| reddō, reddere              | to give back              |
| liber, librī (m.)           | book                      |
| amīcus, -ī (m.)             | friend                    |
| scribō, -ere                | to write                  |
| epistula, -ae (f.)          | letter, message           |
| Imperator, Imperatoris (m.) | Emperor                   |
| placeo, -ere (+dat.)        | to please, be pleasing to |

Note that *placeo* requires the dative case, as opposed to the accusative case. Verbs such as this are denoted with (+*dat.*) or similar abbreviations.

### Exercise: Questions

1. Do librum amico.
2. Amicus meum librum legit et mihi librum reddit.
3. Scribo epistulas Imperatori.
4. Meae epistulae Imperatori placent.

### Solution

1. I give the book to a friend
2. The friend read my book and returned the book to me.
3. I am writing letters to the Emperor.
4. My letters are pleasing to the Emperor.

## 18.6 Roman Numerals

The Romans did not use the Hindu-Arabic numerals we use today. They used their own symbols and own numeric system. We still use Roman Numerals today.

| Roman Numeral | Latin Number          | English Number    | Hindu-Arabic Numeral | Spanish Number | French Number | Italian Number   | Portuguese Number |
|---------------|-----------------------|-------------------|----------------------|----------------|---------------|------------------|-------------------|
| I             | ūnus -a<br>-um        | one               | 1                    | uno            | un            | uno              | um                |
| II            | duo -ae               | two               | 2                    | dos            | deux          | due              | dois              |
| III           | trēs, tria            | three             | 3                    | tres           | trois         | tre              | três              |
| IV            | quattor               | four              | 4                    | cuatro         | quatre        | quattro          | quatro            |
| V             | quinque               | five              | 5                    | cinco          | cinq          | cinque           | cinco             |
| VI            | sēx                   | six               | 6                    | seis           | six           | sei              | seis              |
| VII           | septem                | seven             | 7                    | siete          | sept          | sette            | sete              |
| VIII          | octō                  | eight             | 8                    | ocho           | huit          | otto             | oito              |
| IX            | novem                 | nine              | 9                    | nueve          | neuf          | nove             | nove              |
| X             | decem                 | ten               | 10                   | diez           | dix           | dieci            | dez               |
| XV            | quindecim             | fifteen           | 15                   | quinze         | quinze        | quindici         | quinze            |
| XX            | viginti               | twenty            | 20                   | veinte         | vingt         | venti            | vinte             |
| XXV           | viginti<br>quinque    | twenty-five       | 25                   | veinticinco    | vingt-cinq    | venticinque      | vinte e<br>cinco  |
| L             | quinquag-<br>inta     | fifty             | 50                   | cincuenta      | cinquante     | cinquanta        | cinquenta         |
| C             | centum                | one hun-<br>dred  | 100                  | cien           | cent          | cento            | cem               |
| D             | quingentī,<br>-ae, -a | five hun-<br>dred | 500                  | quinientos     | cinq cents    | cinque-<br>cento | quinhentos        |
| M             | mille                 | one thou-<br>sand | 1000                 | mil            | mille         | mille            | mil               |

Note the declensions of the first three numbers. *Nullus* is the Latin equivalent of zero, for example: *nullam puellam in agro video* means *I see no girl in the field*.

| Nominative | Accusative | Genitive | Dative | Ablative |
|------------|------------|----------|--------|----------|
| nullus     | nullum     | nullius  | nulli  | nullo    |
| nulla      | nullam     | nullius  | nulli  | nulla    |
| nullum     | nullum     | nullius  | nulli  | nullo    |
| unus       | unum       | unius    | uni    | uno      |
| una        | unam       | unius    | uni    | una      |
| unum       | unum       | unius    | uni    | uno      |
| duo        | duos       | duorum   | duobus | duobus   |
| duae       | duas       | duarum   | duabus | duabus   |
| duo        | duo        | duorum   | duobus | duobus   |
| tres       | tres       | trium    | tribus | tribus   |
| tres       | tres       | trium    | tribus | tribus   |
| tria       | tria       | trium    | tribus | tribus   |

### 18.6.1 Exercise 3

Write the word form of the numbers in the following sentences in the correct case.

1. **III** homines me salutant
2. magistro **II** libros reddo
3. **D** senatoribus multa (*many things*) dico
4. **III** horas diligenter laboro

Category:Latin<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>

# 19 The Future Tense

UNKNOWN TEMPLATE latin

## 19.1 Future I, Active

Future active is a tense which, unsurprisingly, refers to something which has not yet happened. The endings are fairly basic, and follow fairly regular rules - however, the future endings used in 1st and 2nd conjugation differ from the endings of 3rd, 3rd-io (not a typo!), and 4th.

For example - "amo, amare" (1st conjugation) would be

Ama bo - I will love

\* Ama bis - You will love

Ama bit - He/She/It will love

Ama bimus - We will love

Ama bitis - Y'all will love

Ama bunt - They will love

\*

- 1st person singular and 3rd person plural use bo and bunt, not bi.

Note the B and the BIs - the distinguishing feature of future tense in Latin.

With "venio, venire" (4th conjugation--io), however, the endings are different. In future, this is what they look like:

Veni am - I will come

Veni es - You will come

Veni et - He/She/It will come

Veni emus - We will come

Veni etis - Y'all will come

Veni ent - They will come

[deleted paragraphs go here. deleted to maintain rigorous accuracy, which we will go back to striving for.)

To clarify: venire, venio.. we know it is 4th conjugation verb and if we look at its first person singular conjugation, we see that it is an io verb, because the conjugation of the first person singular is "venio". (an io category exists within 3rd and fourth conjugations and is a more general concept which we will briefly introduce here by using venire, venio as an example).

Let's first identify what we know.

We know it is 4th conjugation -io because it ends in ire, which tells us that it is 4th conjugation, and io because its nominative singular ends in io (venio). Because it is io, we leave the i in. So, when we are asked (as all textbooks should phrase these new questions):

1. What are the steps to form the future 2nd person conjugation?

We say:

1. It is better to know more than you need: check the infinitive nominative singular, we now know that it is 4th conjugation io. 2. We now know that we can form the stem: the stem is veni and can then add a personal ending--leaving in the i. We leave in the i because it is io. Because it looks weird, we never leave the i in the future perfect.

What is the form for venire, in the future tense, in the 2nd person?

The answer is venies.

Conjugation in the Future tense

|             | 1st      | 2nd       | 3rd     | mixed    | 4th      | Irregular |        |
|-------------|----------|-----------|---------|----------|----------|-----------|--------|
| Infinitive: | amare    | sedere    | legere  | capere   | venire   | ire       | esse   |
| Singular    |          |           |         |          |          |           |        |
| 1st person: | amabo    | sedebo    | legam   | capiam   | veniam   | ibo       | ero    |
| 2nd person: | amabis   | sedebis   | leges   | capies   | venies   | ibis      | eris   |
| 3rd person: | amabit   | sedebit   | leget   | capiet   | veniet   | ibit      | erit   |
| Plural      |          |           |         |          |          |           |        |
| 1st person: | amabimus | sedebimus | legemus | capiemus | veniemus | ibimus    | erimus |
| 2nd person: | amabitis | sedebitis | legetis | capietis | venietis | ibitis    | eritis |
| 3rd person: | amabunt  | sedebunt  | legent  | capient  | venient  | ibunt     | erunt  |





## 20 The Ablative and Vocative Case

### 20.1 The Ablative Case

The ablative case in Latin has 4 main uses:

1. With certain prepositions, eg. in, cum, sub
2. Instrumental ablative, expressing the equivalent of English "by", "with" or "using"
3. Locative Ablative, using the ablative by itself to mean "in", locating an action in space or time
4. Ablative of separation or origin, expressing the equivalent of English "from"

The different uses of the ablative will be dealt progressively. For a summary of all forms of the ablative, please consult the Appendix.

### 20.2 Grammar Part 5: The Power of the Ablative Case

Ablative generally indicates position in time and/or space (i.e. when and where). It can also indicate the idea of ways of getting to a location, abstractly or concretely.

#### 20.2.1 Ablative of Means

##### Exercise

How would you translate "I made the toga by hand"?

- **Hint:** You would not (and should not) use the genitive. The case you are studying right now can be used by itself for this goal.
- **Hint:** Remember that you won't need to use the pronoun "I," since Latin is based not on word order, but on the endings!
- **Glossary:**
  - "to make" - *Facio* ("I make"), *facere* ("to make"), *feci* ("I made"), *factus* ("made")
  - "toga" - *Toga*, *togae* feminine
  - "hand" - *Manus*, *manus* feminine (This is fourth declension)

##### Answer

Answer: *Togam manu feci.*

In this case, the word "manu" is in the ablative (see fourth declension list) and thus means "by hand."

## Exercise

I have my wisdom by means of my teacher.

- 'Glossary:

"wisdom" - *Sapientia, sapientiae* feminine

"to have" - *Habeo* ("I have"), *habere* ("to have"), *habui* ("I had"), *habitus* ("had")

"teacher" - *Magister, magistri* masculine (This is a second declension word, despite the 'r' at the end, like *puer*.)

## Answer

Answer: *Habeo sapientiam magistro.*

### 20.2.2 Ablative of Time

How would you say: *I will arrive at the 5th hour.*

'at the 5th hour' is indicating position of time. Thus, it can be put into the ablative case, giving:

*adveniam quinta hora*

In general, therefore, in order to say "In the morning", "At nine O'clock," or "In the tenth year," use ablative. It is generally used to refer to a specific time in which something has, does, or will occur.

Example: I will leave in the night.

Hint: Future tense can be looked up in the appendices of this Wikibook!

Hint: to leave- *discedo, discedere*; night- *nox, noctis* (This is a third declension word!)

## Answer

Answer: *Discedam nocte.*

Note the simplicity in which Latin translates the six words into simply two. The ending based language completely negates the need for the words "I," "will," "in," and "the."

### 20.2.3 Ablative of Place

*Naves navigabant mari.* The ships were sailing on the sea.

The ablative is also useful for showing the location of things, in general where you would use the words on, in, or at. There is an exception for the slightly more archaic locative, which is used with the words *domi* (from *domus, domus, f.*, home), *ruri* (from *rus, ruris, n.*, country [as opposed to city]), and *Romae* (from *Roma, Romae, f.*, Rome), as well as with the names of towns, cities and small islands.

Latin has its own way of handling prepositions depending on the nouns and their cases in the sentence, including the versatile *in*, which can take many different meanings depending upon the case of the object.

## 20.3 Ablative with prepositions

Here are a few prepositions that can take the ablative (for a fuller list, see the lesson on adverbs and prepositions in the previous chapter):

| Latin                     | English                   |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>in</i> <sup>1</sup>    | in, on                    |
| <i>a/ab</i>               | from                      |
| <i>de</i>                 | down from, concerning     |
| <i>e/ex</i>               | out of, out from          |
| <i>cum</i>                | with                      |
| <i>sine</i>               | without                   |
| <i>pro</i>                | on behalf of, in front of |
| <i>super</i> <sup>2</sup> | upon, above, beyond       |
| <i>sub</i> <sup>3</sup>   | under, beneath            |

As a general rule, when motion is implied, use the accusative, but when location is implied

### 20.3.1 Example 3

*Servus ex agris venit.*

"The slave came from the fields."

Note: *Ager* (*ager*, *agri*, *m.*, field) must take an ablative suffix to match the preceding preposition, in this case *e/ex*.

Incidentally, both *ager* and *campus* mean "field," but *ager*, like its English derivative "agriculture", connotes a farming field, while *campus* (think "camping" or "college campus") means "open field." The *Campus Martius* was a large field in Rome used for military training.

## 20.4 The Vocative Case

While you will rarely need to ask Lupus where the bathroom is in Latin, you may find yourself reading either quotes or letters in which a person is being directly addressed. The case it will be in is the vocative.

For example, "Hail, Augustus" will appear in Latin as *Ave Auguste*, and not *Ave Augustus*.

---

1 Means "into" or "against" when used with the accusative

2 Has static meaning when used with the ablative but connotes motion when used with the accusative

3 Usually means "up to" or "up to the foot of" when used with the accusative

Each declension has its own form of the vocative singular and plural. They are listed in the table below.

Furthermore, in all but the second declension, the nominative and vocative are exactly the same!

|          |         |                          |          |          |          |
|----------|---------|--------------------------|----------|----------|----------|
| Number   |         |                          |          |          |          |
| Singular | First   | Second*                  | Third    | Fourth   | Fifth    |
| Plural** | a<br>ae | us->e, ius->i, r->r<br>i | --<br>es | us<br>us | es<br>es |

- In the second declension singular, there are three separate possibilities for the vocative, depending on its nominative ending. Hence, if it is a *us* word, it will become an *e* and so forth.

### Examples for different declensions in the second declension

- **-us:**  
Lupus -> Lupe (given name, wolf)
- **-ius:**  
Filius -> Fili (son)  
Horatius -> Horati (given name)
- **-r:**  
Puer -> Puer (boy)

*In all cases, the plural vocative is exactly the same as the plural nominative. This extends to those words which are neuter, which always have an 'a' for the nominative and vocative.*

### Examples

1. Hello, Sextus. (Hello= *Salve*)\*  
Salve, Sexte.
  2. Speak, girl! (Speak= *dico, dicere, dixi*)\*  
Dic, puella.
  3. Knee, run! (Knee= *genu*; run= *curro, currere, cucurri*)\*  
Genu, curre!
  4. Oh, heart, why do you lead me? (Oh-o; heart- *cor*, *cordis*-f.; lead-duco, ducere;  
O, cor! Cur ducis tu me?
- Note that the first three also require use of the imperative. The imperative is used when ordering or telling someone what to do, e.g.- "Stop," or "Get away from me."

The basic form of the imperative is created by dropping the "re" off of the infinitive form of the verb, as in: Amare, which becomes Ama; at least in the singular active form, which is all that these exercises require. More can be found about this subject in the chapter on verbs.

## 21 The 3rd, 4th and 5th declensions

### 21.1 3rd, 4th, and 5th Declension Nouns

We have already seen the first two declensions:



|            | 1 <sup>st</sup> declension |                    | 2 <sup>nd</sup> declension |                        | -um (neuter)    |                   |
|------------|----------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
|            | <b>-a</b>                  | <b>SINGULAR</b>    | <b>PLURAL</b>              | <b>-us</b>             | <b>SINGULAR</b> | <b>PLURAL</b>     |
| nominative | puell- <b>a</b>            | puell- <b>ae</b>   | puell- <b>ae</b>           | serv- <b>us</b> / puer | bell- <b>um</b> | bell- <b>a</b>    |
| accusative | puell- <b>am</b>           | puell- <b>ās</b>   | puell- <b>ās</b>           | serv- <b>um</b>        | bell- <b>um</b> | bell- <b>a</b>    |
| genitive   | puell- <b>ae</b>           | puell- <b>ārūm</b> | puell- <b>ārūm</b>         | serv- <b>ī</b>         | bell- <b>ī</b>  | bell- <b>ōrum</b> |
| dative     | puell- <b>ae</b>           | puell- <b>īs</b>   | puell- <b>īs</b>           | serv- <b>ō</b>         | bell- <b>ō</b>  | bell- <b>īs</b>   |
| ablative   | puell- <b>ā</b>            | puell- <b>īs</b>   | puell- <b>īs</b>           | serv- <b>ō</b>         | bell- <b>ō</b>  | bell- <b>īs</b>   |

We will now complete the table of nouns with the 3rd, 4th, and 5th declensions. These declensions are more difficult to work with because their nominative and accusative plural forms are identical, as are their dative and ablative plural forms. To distinguish the cases, you must use a very simple key: context. Context will tell you the meaning.

### 21.1.1 3rd Declension Masculine or Feminine (each word has a set gender): *rex*, m.

3rd declension nouns have two stems: The nominative and vocative singular stem and the stem used for all other cases. Both stems have to be memorized for each noun. Feminine and masculine forms are indistinguishable.

| 3rd Declension | Singular      | Plural          |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| nominative     | <i>rēx</i>    | <i>rēg-ēs</i>   |
| accusative     | <i>rēg-em</i> | <i>rēg-ēs</i>   |
| genitive       | <i>rēg-īs</i> | <i>rēg-um</i>   |
| dative         | <i>rēg-ī</i>  | <i>rēg-ibus</i> |
| ablative       | <i>rēg-e</i>  | <i>rēg-ibus</i> |

### 21.1.2 3rd Declension Neuter *i*-stem: *mare*

| 3rd Declension Neuter | Singular      | Plural          |
|-----------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| nominative*           | <i>mare</i>   | <i>mar-ia</i>   |
| accusative            | <i>mare</i>   | <i>mar-ia</i>   |
| genitive              | <i>mar-īs</i> | <i>mar-ium</i>  |
| dative                | <i>mar-ī</i>  | <i>mar-ibus</i> |
| ablative              | <i>mar-ī</i>  | <i>mar-ibus</i> |

### 21.1.3 Other 3rd Declension Neuter: *litus*

| 3rd Declension Neuter | Singular        | Plural            |
|-----------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| nominative*           | <i>litus</i>    | <i>litor-a</i>    |
| accusative            | <i>litus</i>    | <i>litor-a</i>    |
| genitive              | <i>litor-is</i> | <i>litor-um</i>   |
| dative                | <i>litor-ī</i>  | <i>litor-ibus</i> |
| ablative              | <i>litor-ī</i>  | <i>litor-ibus</i> |

### 21.1.4 List of common 3rd declension stem change patterns

| Singular Nominative | Main stem | Main gender | Examples               |
|---------------------|-----------|-------------|------------------------|
| -is                 | -is       | masc/fem    | canis, navis, hostis   |
| -s                  | -is       | masc/fem    | urbs, rex*, matrix*    |
| -s                  | -tis      | masc/fem    | nox*, mons, pons       |
| -o                  | -onis     | masc/fem    | legio, auditio, statio |

| Singular Nominative | Main stem | Main gender | Examples               |
|---------------------|-----------|-------------|------------------------|
| -en                 | -inis     | neuter      | carmen, flumen, examen |
| -or                 | -oris     | masc/fem    | amor, timor            |
| -us                 | -oris     | neuter      | litus, corpus          |
| -us                 | -eris     | neuter      | genus, vulnus          |

- regs and matrices, respectively, but the gs and cs both compound into x. The c and g stay in the other cases, hence regis and matricis as their genitives. Nox (gen. noctis) works similarly.

## 21.2 4th Declension Masculine/Feminine (each word has a set gender) *gradus*, m.

| 4th Declension | Singular       | Plural           |
|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| nominative     | <i>grad-us</i> | <i>grad-ūs</i>   |
| accusative     | <i>grad-um</i> | <i>grad-ūs</i>   |
| genitive       | <i>grad-ūs</i> | <i>grad-uum</i>  |
| dative         | <i>grad-uī</i> | <i>grad-ibus</i> |
| ablative       | <i>grad-ū</i>  | <i>grad-ibus</i> |

### 21.2.1 4th Declension Neuter: *cornū*

| 4th Declension Neuter | Singular       | Plural           |
|-----------------------|----------------|------------------|
| nominative            | <i>corn-ū</i>  | <i>corn-ua</i>   |
| vocative              | <i>corn-ū</i>  | <i>corn-ua</i>   |
| accusative            | <i>corn-ū</i>  | <i>corn-ua</i>   |
| genitive              | <i>corn-ūs</i> | <i>corn-uum</i>  |
| dative                | <i>corn-ū</i>  | <i>corn-ibus</i> |
| ablative              | <i>corn-ū</i>  | <i>corn-ibus</i> |

### 21.2.2 5th Declension Masculine/Feminine (each word has a set gender; most are feminine): *res*, f.

| 5th Declension Feminine/Masculine | Singular    | Plural        |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|---------------|
| nominative                        | <i>r-ēs</i> | <i>-ēs</i>    |
| vocative                          | <i>r-ēs</i> | <i>r-ēs</i>   |
| accusative                        | <i>r-ēm</i> | <i>r-ēs</i>   |
| genitive                          | <i>r-ēī</i> | <i>r-ērum</i> |
| dative                            | <i>r-ēī</i> | <i>r-ēbus</i> |
| ablative                          | <i>r-ē</i>  | <i>r-ēbus</i> |

## 21.3 Exercises

### 21.3.1 Exercise 1

| Latin                                | English                   | Notes   |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| villa, -ae                           | farmhouse                 | 1st declension feminine   |
| mittō, -ere, mīsi, missum            | send                      | 3rd conjugation   |
| nomen, nominis                       | name                      | 3rd declension neuter   |
| maledicō, -dicere, -dīxi, -dictum    | insult                    | 3rd conjugation   |
| placeō, -ere, placui, placitum + dat | please                    | Can be used as an impersonal verb, eg. <i>mihi placet</i> + inf = it pleases me to... |
| quā rē                               | on account of which       |   |
| iste, ista, istud                    | that damn man/woman/thing | Declines like <i>ille, illa, illud</i> (that)   |
| interficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum  | kill                      | Mixed conjugation   |
| volō, velle, voluī                   | want, be willing          | The present forms are: <i>volo, vis, vult, volumus, vultis, volunt</i>                |
| mandō, mandere, mansī, mansum        | chew on                   | 3rd conjugation   |

Translate the following:

*Hodiē militēs ad villam meī amīcī mittō. Meō amicō, Marcō Tullio nomine, mē in Senatū maledicere placet, quā rē istum interficere volō.*

For extra credit, who in the late Republic might have said such a thing?

(The answer should be: Catiline?)

### 21.3.2 Exercise 2

Translate the following:

*Eheu! Mūs meum pānem mandit. Nunc nihil habeo. Me miserum!*

Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>



## 22 Irregular Verbs & Revision

### 22.1 Irregular Verbs

Irregular verbs do not fit in any particular conjugation. Irregular verbs conjugate but not in a predictable manner. An example of an irregular verb that you have met is 'esse'. There are a few others which will be listed in the present indicative active tense below for you to memorise and refer to.

| Verb   | Mean-<br>ing            | ego  | tu      | is/ea       | nos          | vos           | ei/dae | Imper-<br>ative<br>sing. | Imp.<br>pl |
|--------|-------------------------|------|---------|-------------|--------------|---------------|--------|--------------------------|------------|
| ire    | to go                   | eo   | is      | it          | imus         | itis          | eunt   | i                        | ite        |
| esse   | to be                   | sum  | es      | est         | sumus        | estis         | sunt   | es                       | este       |
| feri   | to be-<br>come          | fio  | fis     | fit         | fimus        | fitis         | fiunt  | fi                       | fite       |
| velle  | to wish                 | volo | vis     | vult        | volu-<br>mus | vultis        | volunt | (none)                   | (none)     |
| malle  | to pre-<br>fer          | malo | mavis   | mavult      | malu-<br>mus | mavul-<br>tis | malunt | (none)                   | (none)     |
| nolle  | to be<br>unwill-<br>ing | nolo | non vis | non<br>vult | nolu-<br>mus | non<br>vultis | nolunt | noli*                    | nolite     |
| ferre* | to<br>carry             | fero | fers    | fert        | ferimus      | fertis        | ferunt | fer                      | ferre      |

The imperatives noli and nolite are used to mean "don't", eg. "nolite ire" = "don't go!"  
Sometimes ferre is considered to be an 'o' stem 3rd conjugation verb. For practical purposes ferre is irregular.

## 22.2 Exercise 1

1. Copy out this table and translate.

Translate the following sentences:

1. fero portam. 2. fers portam 3. fert portam 4. ferimus portam 5. fertis portam 6. ferunt portam 7. sum bonus 8. es bonus 9. est bonus 10. sumus bonī 11. estis bonī 12. sunt bonī 13. este bonī! 14. nolī currāre!

Answer the following questions:

15. What do the irregular verbs have in common with regular verbs? 16. Why do we use 'boni' in question 10, 11, and 12 but 'bonus' in question 7, 8 and 9?

## 22.3 Exercise 2

Exercises:

1. Decline the following five nouns in both singular and plural number in the five common cases (nominative, accusative, genitive, dative, ablative):



|            |       |        |        |          |     |       |      |
|------------|-------|--------|--------|----------|-----|-------|------|
| Singular   | nauta | ātrium | servus | dictātor | rēx | cornū | diēs |
| Nominative |       |        |        |          |     |       |      |
| Accusative |       |        |        |          |     |       |      |
| Genitive   |       |        |        |          |     |       |      |
| Dative     |       |        |        |          |     |       |      |
| Ablative   |       |        |        |          |     |       |      |
| Plural     |       |        |        |          |     |       |      |
| Nominative |       |        |        |          |     |       |      |
| Accusative |       |        |        |          |     |       |      |
| Genitive   |       |        |        |          |     |       |      |
| Dative     |       |        |        |          |     |       |      |
| Ablative   |       |        |        |          |     |       |      |

2. Conjugate the verb 'servāre' in both singular and plural number and all three persons.
3. Conjugate the verb 'esse', in both singular and plural number and all three persons.
4. Translate:

Nota Bene: Often Latin uses the present to indicate a 'vivid past'. It would be suitable to translate the following passage in the past tense.

| Latin                     | English          | Notes  |
|---------------------------|------------------|--|
| heri                      | yesterday        | <i>heri</i> is an adverb. Don't try to use it as a noun ("Yesterday was a good day") |
| taberna, -ae              | shop             | 1st declension feminine  |
| solea, -ae                | sandle           | 1st declension feminine  |
| sic                       | so, and so, thus |  |
| solus, -a, -um            | alone            | The adverb form (only) is <i>solum</i>   |
| casa, -ae                 | house, hut       | 1st declension feminine  |
| sto, stare, steti, statum | stand            | One of the few irregular first conjugation verbs                                     |

Heri, ad tabernam eō. In tabernā sunt trēs rēs quārum amō duas sōlēās et unam mensam. Habeō trēs denariōs, sīc ego emēō mensam solum quod sum nōn dīvinitās. Hodiē, mensa est in casā meā. In triclinio stat.

Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>



## 23 Translation Exercise

### 23.1 Using a Dictionary

To find a Latin word in the dictionary can be difficult. Foremost, Latin verbs are listed using their the 'present indicative 1st person singular active' construct of the verb. Thus, to find the meaning of the verb 'amāre', one must find 'amō' listed in the dictionary. Thus, one must use their wits to determine what the stem and what is the ending of the verb. A bit of searching around in the dictionary may be required. There are a few verbs which are highly irregular which must be learnt such as 'ferō', I carry.

Nouns are usually much easier. They are always given in the nominative singular case. If you see a noun such as 'vōcem', and do not know what it is, do not fret. If you look for 'vōc' in the dictionary, you will not find what you are looking for. 'em' is typically a third declension accusative ending, thus you should be aware that third declension nouns have radically changing stems. Those which have the consonant 'c' usually have the consonant 'x' replacing it in the nominative singular. Thus the nominative singular of vōcem, is vōx. Likewise, 'g' is also often used when shifting from nominative singular cases to other cases. For example, rēx becomes 'rēgem' in the accusative. There are plenty of other simple rules which one learns through experience.

Unconjugatable and indeclinable words are listed 'as is'.

### 23.2 Exercise 1

#### 23.2.1 Vocabulary

| Latin                | English                                      | Notes                         |
|----------------------|--|-------------------------------|
| confessio, -<br>ōnis | confession                                   | 3rd declension femi-<br>nine  |
| liber, libri         | book   | 2nd declension mascu-<br>line |
| malus, -a, -<br>um   | bad  |                               |
| de + abl.            | from, down from, aside; about,<br>concerning |                               |

#### 23.2.2 Passage

Translate the following passage:

Confessiōnum meārum librī tredecim et dē malīs et dē bonīs meīs deum laudant iūstum et bonum atque in eum excitant hūmānum intellectum et affectum. Interim quod ad mē attinet, hoc in mē egērunt cum scriberentur et agunt cum leguntur. Quid dē illīs aliī sentiant, ipsī viderint; multīs tamen frātribus eōs multum placuisse et placēre sciō. Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>

## 24 Imperfect and Future indicative active constructs

### Imperfect and Future constructs

Warning: Beyond the imperfect, this page cannot is not entirely clear. Do not use it beyond the basic imperfect if you are a first time Latin student. Specific aspects confused me until I got up in the morning. Of course, I never knew them very well anyway.

See discussion for my thoughts on this.

I have substansially corrected this page. I apologize for my prior errors.

Smkatz<sup>1</sup> 14:14, 13 Nov 2004 (UTC)

### 24.1 Imperfect Active Indicative

The imperfect is a construct like: **I was seeing**. In Latin it would look like this: **Videbam**.

English has a similar construct called progressive past. Actions seem incomplete, and so the imperfect label. For example, "I was running," "We were sailing," "They were calling." Note that 'to be' is always there. Latin, however, would sometimes use imperfect like simple past; accordingly, "We were sailing" could be translated as "We sailed." Other translations of imperfect can be used to/kept such as "We used to sail/We kept sailing."

Regardless of language, the concept of an imperfect is important. Imperfect is called imperfect for a reason - in Latin, the verb "perficere" means to finish/complete, which is what perfect is from. Thus, imperfect, in the grammatical sense, means not finished - that the action could be or could not be completed. Perfect instead means it has been finished - I saw. You have already seen, and it is now completed. I was seeing implies that the action is not yet completed.

The perfect tense, which we will learn later, is a more immediate reference to the past. The name, imperfect, helps you remember its use: in situations where you can't say when an event started or ended or happened, you must use the imperfect.

In situations where you can know when an event started or ended or happened, use the perfect.

You conjugate the imperfect tense this way: verb + ba + personal ending

The endings for imperfect are:

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User%3ASmkatz>

Sg. 1. **-bam** 2. **-bas** 3. **-bat** Pl. 1. **-bamus** 2. **-batis** 3. **-bant**

Note that the only thing we add are ba + the personal endings (the same as in the present tense) to the infinitive stem. This gives us the imperfect conjugation.

Note that in third and fourth conjugations, you will have to form it differently. There is \*no\* rule to explain this, it just is, although there are memorization techniques that can help.

venire is 4th conjugation and is formed like: veniebam veniebas veniebat veniebamus veniebatis veniebant

For third conjugation, an example used in some textbooks/study guides is: capere (to capture or seize)

capiebam capiebas capiebat capiebamus capiebatis capiebant

Note that it is easiest to think of what the endings -ere and -ire lack. The imperfect -ba + the personal ending, which we can call the imperfect conjugation, must be prefixed by ie.

A few examples:

**amabam** - I was loving (A-conjugation--1st) **monebatis** - You were warning [object/personage] (of something negative) (Pl.) (2nd Conjugation) **vinciebamus** - We were defeating (*long I-conjugation--3rd conjugation*) **capiebant** - They were catching (short I-conjugation--3rd conjugation) **pellebat** - She/he/it was propelling (drive something (not a vehicle), propel something) (consonantic conjugation)

(Wiki-reading tips: See discussion. Some of the above may be unclear, however the clarifying '--' and '/' indicate verification. We may not know what the original author intended, but we know what conjugations the examples are.)

## 24.2 Future I, Active

Future active is a tense which, unsurprisingly, refers to something which has not yet happened. The endings are fairly basic, and follow fairly regular rules - however, the future endings used in 1st and 2nd conjugation differ from the endings of 3rd, 3rd-io (not a typo!), and 4th.

For example - "amo, amare" (1st conjugation) would be

Ama bo - I will love

\* Ama bis - You will love

Ama bit - He/She/It will love

Ama bimus - We will love

Ama bitis - Y'all will love

Ama bunt - They will love

\*

- 1st person singular and 3rd person plural use bo and bunt, not bi.

Note the B and the BIs - the distinguishing feature of future tense in Latin.

With "venio, venire" (4th conjugation--io), however, the endings are different. In future, this is what they look like:

Veni am - I will come

Veni es - You will come

Veni et - He/She/It will come

Veni emus - We will come

Veni etis - Y'all will come

Veni ent - They will come

[deleted paragraphs go here. deleted to maintain rigorous accuracy, which we will go back to striving for.)

To clarify: venire, venio.. we know it is 4th conjugation verb and if we look at its first person singular conjugation, we see that it is an io verb, because the conjugation of the first person singular is "venio". (an io category exists within 3rd and fourth conjugations and is a more general concept which we will briefly introduce here by using venire, venio as an example).

Let's first identify what we know.

We know it is 4th conjugation -io because it ends in ire, which tells us that it is 4th conjugation, and io because its nominative singular ends in io (venio). Because it is io, we leave the i in. So, when we are asked (as all textbooks should phrase these new questions):

1. What are the steps to form the future 2nd person conjugation?

We say:

1. It is better to know more than you need: check the infinitive nominative singular, we now know that it is 4th conjugation io. 2. We now know that we can form the stem: the stem is veni and can then add a personal ending--leaving in the i. We leave in the i because it is io. Because it looks weird, we never leave the i in the future perfect.

What is the form for venire, in the future tense, in the 2nd person?

The answer is venies.



## 24.3 Future conjugation

Example: **I will love: amabo**

The table at the end of this page tries to summarize the future tense, with both sets of personal endings. As the warning notes, this summary may confuse some.

As an aid to your understanding, this table only applies to the future tense. Do not assume the table is displaying a pattern that is somehow applicable to all of Latin.

(Wiki-reading-tip: This is why they are in the future section, and were not discussed before.)

The A- and the E- conjugation are (relatively) straight-forward. The others are more advanced, and as the warning notes, could confuse a first-time student. Commercial textbooks probably explain it better at this point, although laying their explanation in a table like the one below is well-advised. Leave items marked with a ? in until issues are resolved.

Take a look at the following table:

| <b>A</b>          | <b>E</b>           | <b>long I (vincere/3rd conj.)</b> | <b>short I</b>    | <b>Consonantic</b> |
|-------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| ama- <b>bo</b>    | mone- <b>bo</b>    | vinci- <b>am</b>                  | capi- <b>am</b>   | pell- <b>am</b>    |
| ama- <b>bis</b>   | mone- <b>bis</b>   | vinci- <b>es</b>                  | capi- <b>es</b>   | pell- <b>es</b>    |
| ama- <b>bit</b>   | mone- <b>bit</b>   | vinci- <b>et</b>                  | capi- <b>et</b>   | pell- <b>et</b>    |
| ama- <b>bimus</b> | mone- <b>bimus</b> | vinci- <b>emus</b>                | capi- <b>emus</b> | pell- <b>emus</b>  |
| ama- <b>bitis</b> | mone- <b>bitis</b> | vinci- <b>etis</b>                | capi- <b>etis</b> | pell- <b>etis</b>  |
| ama- <b>bunt</b>  | mone- <b>bunt</b>  | vinci- <b>ent</b>                 | capi- <b>ent</b>  | pell- <b>ent</b>   |

The vocabulary mostly consists of verbs, and can easily be looked up in a dictionary. We will give a limited translation below, and the rest, for those who are particularly adept at language learning, can be learned through immersion.

capere (3rd conjugation--short ere): to seize, metaphorically or literally [see dictionary for full explanation]

amare (first conjugation -are): to love

EXERCISE: Can you be your own editor?

monere (what conjugation? 2nd Conjugation Does it change based on the macron over the first vowel on the ending? Yes long ere = 2nd short = 3rd[long ere vs. short ere?])

It means to warn like in admonish (an English word that means to scold lightly.)

Category:Latin<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>2</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>

## 25 Chapter 2 Verse

### 25.1 Using a Dictionary

Foremost, Latin verbs are listed using the **present indicative first person singular active** construct of the verb. For example, to find the meaning of the verb *amāre*, you must find *amō* listed in the dictionary. Some verbs like *esse* and *ferre* are highly irregular and use different stems to form the perfect tenses.

Nouns are usually much easier. They are always given in the nominative singular. If you see a noun such as *vōcem* and do not know what it is, do not fret. If you look for *voc-* in the dictionary, you will not find what you are looking for. The ending *-em* typically belongs to the third-declension accusative; thus, be aware that third-declension nouns have radically changing stems. Those that have the consonant *c* or *g* usually have the consonant *x* in the nominative singular. Thus the nominative singular of *vōcem* is *vōx*, and *rēx* becomes *rēgem* in the accusative singular. There are plenty of other simple rules which you will learn through experience.

Words that do not conjugate or decline (like prepositions and particles) are listed under their only form.

### 25.2 Exercise 1

#### 25.2.1 Vocabulary

1. *affectus*, -ūs, *m.*, goodwill
2. *confessiō*, -ōnis, *f.*, confession
3. *dē*, from, about, concerning
4. *liber*, *librī*, *m.*, book
5. *malus* -a -um, evil, bad
6. *placeō* -ēre + dative, to please (*placuisse* is a perfect infinitive)
7. *filia*, -ae *f.*, daughter
8. *puella*, -ae *f.*, girl

#### 25.2.2 Other Difficulties

1. *quod ad mē attinet*, as far as I'm concerned
2. *cum scriberentur*, when they were written (imperfect passive subjunctive)
3. *quid sentiant*, what they think (present subjunctive in indirect question)
4. *ipsi viderint*, (loosely) they will see in their own way (future perfect)

5. *eōs placēre sciō*, accusative-infinitive construction for indirect statement: "I know they [the books] please"

### 25.2.3 Passage

Translate the following passage:

*Confessiōnum meārum librī tredecim et dē malīs et dē bonīs meīs deum laudant iūstum et bonum atque in eum excitant humanum intellectum et affectum. Interim quod ad mē attinet, hoc in mē ēgērunt cum scriberentur et agunt cum leguntur. quid dē illīs aliā sentiant, ipsī viderint; multis tamen fratribus eōs multum placuisse et placēre sciō.*

Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

## 25.3 Chapter 3: Advanced Sentences

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>

## 26 Imperatives



# 27 Imperative

## 27.1 Positive Imperative

### 27.1.1 English

In English (and in Latin), the positive imperative is a command. For example:

- **Do** it!
- **Stop**, in the name of love!
- **Take** out the garbage!

### 27.1.2 Latin

In Latin, the imperative singular is found by taking the last two letters off of the infinitive. The six exceptions to this rule are *dicere* (*dic*), *ducere* (*duc*), *facere* (*fac*), *velle*, *malle* (infinitives not used) and *nolle* (*noli*). *Ferre* (*fer*) and *esse* (*es*) are often considered irregular due to the lack of a vowel at the end but we can see that applying the rule of removing the last two letters forms the imperatives correctly.

#### Examples:

Run, boy!

***Curre***, *puer*!<sup>1</sup> (from *curro*, *currere*; to run)

Go!

***I***! (from *eo*, *ire*; to go)

Seize the day!

***Carpediem***! (from *carpo*, *carpere*; to pluck)

#### Questions

#### Write out:

1. Love me, Octavia! (to love = *amo*, *amare*)
2. Come to Rome! (to come = *venio*, *venire*; Rome = *Roma*, *Romae*, *f.*)

---

1 In many cases, the vocative will be used with the imperative, unless the imperative is used in a conversation or at a reader, as in a letter or guide.

### 27.1.3 Plural

To form the plural imperative in Latin, take the 2nd person plural present form of the verb (eg. *amatis*, *sedetis*, *regitis*, *venitis*) and replace the *is* at the end with *e*. The only exceptions to the rule are *velle*, *malle* (imperatives not used) and *nolle* (*nolite*). *Ferre* (*ferite*) and *esse* (*estite*) are often considered irregular but applying the rule (*fertis* -> *ferite*, *estis* -> *estite*) correctly forms the imperatives.

Go home, boys!

***Itedomum, pueri.***

Stay, all of you!

***Manete, omnes!***

### Exercises

Write out:

1. Take them, men! (to take = *adripio*, *adripere*)
2. Fear me, children! (to fear = *timeo*, *timere*; children = *liberi*)

## 27.2 Negative Imperative

### 27.2.1 English

In English, we use the word "don't" for prohibitions, or negative imperatives. For example:

- **Don't do it!**
- **Don't say that!**

### 27.2.2 Latin

Similarly, in Latin the negative imperative is formed with two words, the imperative of *nolo*, *nolle* and the infinitive.

*Nolo* by itself means "I do not want," but in its imperative it means "do not...!"

*Nolle* is irregular, and its imperative forms are *noli* and *nolite*.

### Examples

Do not fear me!

***Nolite timere!***

Don't build the aqueduct there, soldiers!

***Nolite** aquaeductum ibi **aedificare**, milites!*

Don't wash the dog, boys!

***Nolite**, pueri, canem **lavare**!*

### Exercises

Translate:

1. Don't cry, daughter! (to cry = *fleo, flere*)
2. Don't hurt me, friends! (to hurt = *vulnero, vulnerare*)
3. Don't go into the water, boys!
4. Don't hurt them, soldiers! (them = use *eos*, masculine accusative plural of *is, ea, id*)





## 28 Active v. Passive Verbs

A verb's voice shows the relationship between the subject and the action expressed by the verb. Latin has two voices: active and passive.

In the active voice, the subject of the clause performs the verb on something else (the object), e.g., "The girl sees the boy."

In the passive voice, the subject of the sentence receives the action of the verb, e.g., "The boy is seen by the girl."

The personal endings in the active voice are: **-ō/-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.**

The personal endings in the passive voice (present, imperfect, future) are: **-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -mini, -ntur.**

In the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect, the passive voice is formed by the fourth principal part plus the proper forms of **sum, esse**. For the perfect tense, use the present forms of **esse**, for the pluperfect use the imperfect forms of **esse**, and for the future perfect use the future forms of **esse**. The fourth principal part, when used in a passive construction, acts as a first-second declension adjective and is declined accordingly.

As stated before, when the passive voice is used, the subject receives the action of the verb from another agent. This agent, when it is a person, is expressed by the preposition **ā/ab** plus the ablative case. This construction is called the *ablative of personal agent*. The *ablative of cause* is used without a preposition when the agent is not a person.

### 28.1 Examples:

- Active: *Puella puerum videt.* (The girl sees the boy.)
- Passive: *Puer ā puellā vidētur.* (The boy is seen by the girl.)

*Puella* takes *ā* and the ablative, as it is a personal agent.

- Active: *Timor virum capit.* (Fear seizes the man.)
- Passive: *Vir timore capitur.* (The man is seized by fear.)

*Timore* is ablative of cause.

- Active: *Hostēs urbem oppugnābant.* (The enemies were attacking the city.)
- Passive: *Urbs ab hostibus oppugnābantur.* (The city was being attacked by the enemies.)

## 28.2 Deponent verbs

Some verbs are always passive in form, even though they have an active meaning. For example:

- filius agricolam **sequitur** - The son follows the farmer
- sol **ortus est** - The sun has risen
- agricola hostes **verentur** - The farmers fear the enemies
- gladio **usus sum** - I used a sword

Some, called semi-deponent verbs, take on a passive form on only in the perfect. For example:

- colono **confido** - I trust the farmer
- colono **confisus sum** - I trusted the farmer

Note that some deponent and semi-deponent verbs take the accusative case (eg. vereor, vereri, veritus sum = I fear), some the ablative (eg. utor, uti, usus sum = I use) and some the dative (eg. confido, confidere, confisus sum = I trust). When you first encounter such a verb in Latin, be sure to remember the case of the object the verb is taking along with its spelling and meaning.

Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>

## 29 Indicative Passive Verbs

See discussion for a tutorial on the passive voice and how to use it in Latin, including external links which explain future, imperfect, and present indicative passive verb forms.

I consider commercial textbooks to be inadequate, so I do not believe that this article can wait.

Here are the conjugations for the imperfect passive tenses. The basic rules for going to passive are:

In the first person, add -r if the active ending is a vowel, otherwise change the final constant to an -r. Examples:

paro (I prepare) -> paror (I am being prepared)

aperiebam (I was opening) -> aperiebar (I was being opened)

defendemus (we will defend) -> defendemur (we will be defended)

tenebimus (we will hold) -> tenebimur (we will be held)

In the third person, add -ur. Examples:

parat (he prepares) -> paratur (he is being prepared)

aperiebat (he was opening) -> aperiebatur (he was being opened)

defendent (they will defend) -> defendentur (they will be defended)

tenebunt (they will hold) -> tenebuntur (they will be held)

In the second person, things get more complicated. For the plural, replace "tis" with "mini". Note the exception in "ferre", where "fertis" becomes "ferimini". In the word "ferre", the "rm" letter combination consistently gets separated (ferimus instead of fermus, ferimur instead of fermur and ferimini instead of fermini). For the singular present, take out the active ending, add the thematic vowel (a from -are, e from -ere, i from -ire and nothing from -re, as in ferre) of the verb's infinitive ending and add -ris. Examples:

paras (you prepare) -> pararis (you are being prepared)

tenes (you are holding) -> tener**is** (you are being held)

defendis (you are defending) -> defender**is** (you are being defended)

audis (you are listening) -> aud**ir**is (you are being listened to)

defendetis (you will defend) -> defend**emini** (you are being defended)

amabis (you will love) -> amaber**is** (you will be loved)

Note the -eris ending in the future passive. The future active bo, bis, bit, bimus, bitis, bunt looks like the third conjugation so the passive bor, beris, bitur, bimus, bimini, buntur looks like the third conjugation. The imperfect passive is bar, baris, batur, bamur, bamini, bantur.

**Conjugation in the Present Passive**

|             | 1st     | 2nd       | 3rd      | mixed     | 4th       | Irregular |
|-------------|---------|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Infinitive: | amare   | terrere   | legere   | capere    | audire    | ferre     |
| Singular    |         |           |          |           |           |           |
| 1st person: | amor    | terreor   | legor    | capior    | audior    | feror     |
| 2nd person: | amaris  | terreri   | legeris  | caperis   | audiris   | ferris    |
| 3rd person: | amatur  | terretur  | legitur  | capitur   | auditur   | fertur    |
| Plural      |         |           |          |           |           |           |
| 1st person: | amamur  | terremur  | legimur  | capimur   | audimur   | ferimur   |
| 2nd person: | amamini | terremini | legimini | capimini  | audimini  | ferimini  |
| 3rd person: | amantur | terrentur | leguntur | capiuntur | audiuntur | feruntur  |

**Conjugation in the Imperfect Passive**

|             | 1st       | 2nd        | 3rd        |             |             |
|-------------|-----------|------------|------------|-------------|-------------|
| Infinitive: | amare     | terrere    | legere     | mixed       | Irregular   |
| Singular    |           |            |            | capere      | ferre       |
| 1st per-    | amabar    | terrebar   | legebar    | capiebar    | feriebar    |
| son:        |           |            |            |             |             |
| 2nd per-    | amabaris  | terrebaris | legebaris  | capibaris   | feriebaris  |
| son:        |           |            |            | audiebaris  |             |
| 3rd per-    | amabatur  | terre-     | legebatur  | capiebatur  | feriebatur  |
| son:        |           | batur      |            | audiebatur  |             |
| Plural      |           |            |            |             |             |
| 1st per-    | amabamur  | terreba-   | legebamur  | capieba-    | feriebamur  |
| son:        |           | mur        |            | mur         |             |
| 2nd per-    | amabamini | terre-     | legebamini | capiebamini | feriebamini |
| son:        |           | bamini     |            | audiebamini |             |
| 3rd per-    | amabantur | terreban-  | legebantur | capieban-   | feriebantur |
| son:        |           | tur        |            | tur         |             |

## Conjugation in the Future Passive

|             | 1st       | 2nd        | 3rd      | mixed     | 4th       | Irregular |
|-------------|-----------|------------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Infinitive: | amare     | terre      | legere   | capere    | audire    | ferre     |
| Singular    |           |            |          |           |           |           |
| 1st per-    | amabor    | terrebor   | legar    | capiar    | audiar    | ferar     |
| son:        |           |            |          |           |           |           |
| 2nd per-    | amaberis  | terreberis | legeris  | capieris  | audieris  | fereris   |
| son:        |           |            |          |           |           |           |
| 3rd per-    | amabitur  | terrebitur | legetur  | capietur  | audietur  | feretur   |
| son:        |           |            |          |           |           |           |
| Plural      |           |            |          |           |           |           |
| 1st per-    | amabimur  | terrebimur | legemur  | capiemur  | audiemur  | feremur   |
| son:        |           |            |          |           |           |           |
| 2nd per-    | amabimini | terrebi-   | legemini | capiemini | audiemini | feremini  |
| son:        |           | mini       |          |           |           |           |
| 3rd per-    | amabuntur | terrebun-  | legentur | capientur | audientur | ferentur  |
| son:        |           | tur        |          |           |           |           |



Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>

# 30 Principal Parts

## 30.1 Principal Parts

All Latin verbs are identified by four principal parts. By using the four principal parts, one can obtain any and all forms of the verb, including participles, infinitives, gerunds and the like.

Examples of principal parts from verbs of each conjugation:

1st: *ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum* (to walk)

2nd: *doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum* (to teach)

3rd: *mittō, mittere, mīsi, mīssum* (to send)

4th: *audiō, audīre, audīvī, auditum* (to hear)

For all regular verbs, the principal parts consist of the first person singular present active indicative, the infinitive, the first person singular perfect active indicative, and the supine (or in some texts, the perfect passive participle).

- Deponent verbs have only three principal parts:

*patior, patī, passus sum* (to suffer)

*utor, ūti, ūsus sum* (to use)

- Likewise, semi-deponent verbs have only three:

*audeō, audēre, ausus sum* (to dare)

*gaudeō, gaudēre, gavīsus sum* (to rejoice)

Some verbs lack fourth principal parts (e.g., *timeō, timēre, timuī, —*; to be afraid); others, less commonly, lack a third in addition (e.g., *ferro, ferre, tuli, latum*; to bring/carry). Others, such as *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus*, may use the future active participle (*futūrus*) as their fourth principal part; this indicates that the verb cannot be made passive.

Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>



# 31 The Perfect Indicative Tense

## 31.1 Latin Perfect Active Tense

The perfect tense is used for action that has already been completed. English has two corresponding constructions: present perfect and simple past. The **present perfect** uses the present of "to have" plus the past participle. ("I have sailed to Athens twice." "These women have spoken the truth.") The **simple past** is a separate verb form that indicates a completed action. ("I came, I saw, I conquered.") Another related form, which uses "did" as an auxiliary, is used for emphasis, negation or interrogation. ("I did see you at the Forum, didn't I?")

In Latin, the perfect indicative is equivalent to all of these.

The perfect endings:

| Person | Singular                | Plural                                   |
|--------|-------------------------|--|
| 1st    | -ī ( <i>egō</i> )       | -īmus ( <i>nōs</i> )                     |
| 2nd    | -istī ( <i>tu</i> )     | -istis ( <i>vōs</i> )                    |
| 3rd    | -it ( <i>is/ea/id</i> ) | -ērunt <sup>(1)</sup> ( <i>ē/ae/ea</i> ) |

<sup>(1)</sup> There is an alternative third person plural ending, -ēre, used mainly in poetry. For example, *amāvēre* = *amāvērunt*.

Although these endings apply to all Latin verbs, each verb's stem changes differently in the perfect tense. To find the stem, use the third principal part, which is the first person singular perfect active indicative form of that verb.

- To conjugate the perfect present, attach the personal ending to the perfect stem.

### 31.1.1 Example

- *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum*; to love, like

Note that *amāvī* is the first person singular perfect active indicative. Drop the -ī to get the stem, which is *amāv-*, then add personal endings.

**Singular:**

*amāv-* + -ī = *amāvī* (I have loved.)

*amāv-* + -istī = *amāvisti* (You have loved.)

*amāv-* + -it = *amāvit* (He/She/It has loved.)

**Plural:**

*amāv- + -īmus = amāvīmus* (We have loved.)

*amāv- + -istis = amāvistis* (You have loved.)

*amāv- + -ērunt = amāvērunt* (They have loved.)

Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

Basically, the Perfect indicative active is the perfect tense under a flash name.

## 31.2 Rules for Finding the Perfect Stem

The perfect stem can often be guessed by knowing the verb's first person singular and infinitive. Here are some rules that perfect stems often follow.

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>

Conjugation in the Perfect tense

| Conjugation      | Perfect First Person Singular |     | Notes |
|------------------|-------------------------------|-----|-------|
| 1st (-are)       | -avi                          | -i  | -edi  |
| 2nd (-eo, -ere): | -ui                           | -i  | -si   |
| 3rd (-o, -ere):  | -i                            | -si | -idi  |

-avi is used for the overwhelming majority of verbs. Exceptions include iuvare and lavare (iuvi, lavi) and dare (dedi).

-ui is the most common but much less so than -avi in the first conjugation. Some verbs, like videre and sedere, become vidi and sedi. . For the -si rule, the letter d at the end of the stem, if present, is dropped and cs and gs compound into x (eg. rideo -> ridsi -> risi).

Many verbs, like defendere, keep the same perfect stem, so the first person perfect singular becomes defendi. This can create tense ambiguity in the third person singular and first person plural (defendit, defendimus). The -si rule follows the same conventions as the 2nd conjugation (eg. ludere -> ludsi -> lusi, regere -> regsi -> rex). The -idi rule is used with compounds of dare, which are all third conjugation (eg. reddere -> reddidi, credere -> credidi)

|                    |      |      |     |   |
|--------------------|------|------|-----|---|
| mixed (-io, -ere): | -i   | -ivi | -si | For the -i rule, the last vowel in the stem is often changed to e (eg. capere -> cepi, facere -> feci). For the -si rule, the stem is unchanged (eg. cupere -> cupivi). For the -si rule, just like in the 3rd conjugation, cs and gs compound into x and the changing vowel rule also applies (eg. conspiciere -> conspexi). Fairly straightforward. eg. audire -> audiui, aperire -> aperui |
| 4th (-io, ire)     | -ivi | -ui  |     | All ire compounds (eg. transire, redire, inire) follow this rule.   |
| ire (irreg.)       | -ii  |      |     | The perfect of esse is fui, some verbs in the esse family change the perfect slightly (eg. abesse -> afui, posse -> potui)  |
| esse (irreg.)      | fui  |      |     |   |

## 32 The Perfect Indicative Passive Verbs

The perfect passive is an easy tense to form in Latin, and it is also one of the most useful. The verb "to love" in the perfect passive would translate into English as "I was loved".

### 32.1 Forming the Perfect Passive in Latin

In order to form the perfect passive you must be familiar with the principal parts of the verb with which you are working, e.g., *amo*, *amāre*, *amāvī*, *amātum*. The fourth principal part is the **perfect passive participle**.

- In its neuter nominative form, the perfect passive participle is identical to the nominative supine (a fourth-declension noun whose morphology and usage are very restricted). Be careful not to confuse the two.

To use the perfect passive, first determine the gender and number of the subject of the sentence. For example, in the sentence "The queen was killed by the soldier," *queen* is the subject. In Latin, *queen* will be feminine nominative singular (*regīna*).

Now make the participle agree with the subject in gender and number (and case), just as you would with any adjective. As a review, the singular endings for the participle, a first/second declension adjective, are:

|                                    |
|------------------------------------|
| Masculine: -us - ( <i>amātus</i> ) |
| Feminine: -a - ( <i>amāta</i> )    |
| Neuter: -um - ( <i>amātum</i> )    |

The endings for plural nouns are:

|                                   |
|-----------------------------------|
| Masculine: -ī - ( <i>amātī</i> )  |
| Feminine: -ae - ( <i>amātae</i> ) |
| Neuter: -a - ( <i>amāta</i> )     |

These participles by themselves can be translated with "having been", eg. *amatus* = having been loved. Add a present form of *sum*, and you have the perfect passive, eg. *amatus sum* = I am having been loved = I have been loved.

### 32.2 Conjugation of Verbs in the Perfect Passive

#### 32.2.1 First Conjugation (*amM* to love)



| Person | Singular            | Plural              |
|--------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1st    | amātus(/-a) sum     | amātī(/-ae) sumus   |
| 2nd    | amātus(/-a) es      | amātī(/-ae) estis   |
| 3rd    | amātus(/-a/-um) est | amātī(/-ae/-a) sunt |

### 32.2.2 Second Conjugation (*moneM* to warn)

| Person | Singular    | Plural       |
|--------|-------------|--------------|
| 1st    | monitus sum | monitī sumus |
| 2nd    | monitus es  | monitī estis |
| 3rd    | monitus est | monitī sunt  |

### 32.2.3 Third Conjugation (*regM* to rule)

| Person | Singular   | Plural      |
|--------|------------|-------------|
| 1st    | rectus sum | recti sumus |
| 2nd    | rectus es  | rectī estis |
| 3rd    | rectus est | rectī sunt  |

### 32.2.4 Fourth Conjugation (*audiM* to hear)

| Person | Singular    | Plural       |
|--------|-------------|--------------|
| 1st    | auditus sum | audītī sumus |
| 2nd    | auditus es  | audītī estis |
| 3rd    | auditus est | audītī sunt  |

### 32.2.5 Notes

1. Remember that the subject **must** agree with the passive participle.
2. Passive verbs do not take an object. Instead they have an agent or instrument, indicated by the ablative case.

## 32.3 Examples

*Regina ā milite interfecta est.*

"The queen was killed by the soldier."

*Rex ad proelium est ā servīs portātus.*

"The king was carried to the battle by his slaves."

*Numquam enim ā Pomponiā nostrā certior sum factus esse cū dare litterās possem.* (Cicero, *Ad Atticum* 1.5)

"For I was never made aware by our Pomponia that there was someone to whom I could give a letter."

## 32.4 Exercises

Convert the following sentences with relative clauses into sentences with the same meaning but using past participles.

eg. *Aemilianus vidit urbem quam deleverat* -> *Aemilianus vidit urbem a se deletam*

1. colonus exit casam quam vendidit
2. colonus videt nuntium (*messenger*) quam Romam misit
3. nuntius colono dedit epistolam quam coloni pater scripserat
4. colonus gratias egit (*gave thanks*) nuntio quem saepe viderat



## 33 Future and Past Perfect Indicative Tenses

### 33.1 Future perfect

The future perfect tense is used for an action that will have been completed in the future by the time something else has happened.

English example: "I **will have seen** the movie by the time it comes out."

To form the future perfect, take the perfect stem and add the future perfect endings:

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| -erō  | -erimus |
| -eris | -eritis |
| -erit | -erint  |

Note the similarities to the future tense of *sum*, except for the third person plural ending *-erint*<sup>1</sup> in place of *-erunt*, which serves as the perfect ending instead.

Hence: **amāverō**, I will have loved; **videritis**, you (pl.) will have seen

### 33.2 Pluperfect

The pluperfect tense is used to describe something in the past that happened before another event in the past.

English example: "I **had graduated** by the time I applied for a job."

To form the pluperfect, take the perfect stem and add the pluperfect endings:

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| -eram | -erāmus |
| -erās | -erātis |
| -erat | -erant  |

Hence: **amāveram**, I had loved; **viderātis**, you (pl.) had seen

---

1 *-int* as an ending is rare; *-erint* and *sint* are two of the most common

### 33.3 Examples

*De Acutiliano autem negotio quod mihi **mandaras** (**mandaveras**), ut primum a tuo digressu Romam veni, **confeceram**.* (Cicero, *Ad Atticum* 1.5)

"But as to the business of Acutilius that you had entrusted with me, I had already taken care of it when I came to Rome first thing after your departure." Note the relationship of the pluperfect verbs *mandaras* (-*aras* is a common contraction for -*averas*) and *confeceram* to the perfect verb *veni*.

*Ego certe meum officium **praestitero**.* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico* IV)

"I certainly will have prevailed in my duty."

Category:Latin<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>2</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>

## 34 Ablative Absolute and Accusative Infinitive Constructions

### 34.1 Ablative Absolute

The ablative absolute construction is used in a sentence to provide a background for the main action in the sentence. An ablative absolute is formed with a noun and an adjective or participle in the ablative case.

*convivis ingressis ille cenam parat*

With the guests having entered, he prepares dinner.

*viris in taberna bibentibus feminae diligenter laborabant*

With the men drinking in the tavern, the women worked diligently.

*omnibus ieiunis multos panes parare debuit*

With everyone (being) hungry, he had to prepare lots of bread.

### 34.2 Accusative Infinitive

The accusative infinitive construction is used to indirectly report speech or thoughts. An accusative infinitive construction is formed by taking the indirect clause and putting the subject in the accusative and the verb in the infinitive.

*ille credit **pueros stultos esse***

He believes the boys to be fools = He believes **that the boys are fools**.

*magister parentibus dicit **pueros stultos esse***

The teacher says to the parents **that the boys are fools**.

*colonus uxori dicit **se confectum esse***

The farmer says to his wife **that he is exhausted**.

In this sentence, note how the reflexive *se* refers to the main subject of the sentence.

*colonus uxori **dixit** se confectum esse*

The farmer said to his wife that he **was** tired.

Note how *esse*, despite being a present infinitive, is translated into the past tense. This is because the infinitive uses the action of the main verb, in this case *dixit* as a reference point instead of the present.

But what about sentences such as "the farmer **says** to his wife that he **worked** diligently"? For those, you need to use the **past infinitive**.

### 34.2.1 Overview of infinitives in all tenses

| <b>Tense</b> | <b>Active</b>                  | <b>Passive</b>             | <b>Active</b>                   | <b>Passive</b>              | <b>Active</b>                | <b>Passive</b>          | <b>Active</b>                   | <b>Passive</b>              |
|--------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Present      | amare                          | amari                      | monere                          | moneri                      | regere                       | regi                    | audire                          | audiri                      |
| Past         | amavisse                       | amatus,<br>-a, -um<br>esse | monuisse                        | monitus,<br>-a, -um<br>esse | rexisse                      | rectus, -a,<br>-um esse | audivisse                       | auditus,<br>-a, -um<br>esse |
| Future       | amatu-<br>rus, -a,<br>-um esse | amatum<br>iri              | monitu-<br>rus, -a,<br>-um esse | monitum<br>iri              | recturus,<br>-a, -um<br>esse | rectum<br>iri           | auditu-<br>rus, -a,<br>-um esse | auditum<br>iri              |



The sentence "The farmer says to his wife that he worked diligently" would thus translate as:

*colonus uxori dicit se diligenter laboravisse*

The following examples show how different infinitives with the main verb in the past and present would appear in English:

- colonus uxori dixit se diligenter laboravisse = The farmer said to his wife that he **had worked** diligently.
- colonus uxori dixit se diligenter laborare = The farmer said to his wife that he **was working** diligently.
- colonus uxori dixit se diligenter laboraturum esse = The farmer said to his wife that he **would work** (or *was going to work*) diligently.
- colonus uxori dicit se diligenter laboraturum esse = The farmer said to his wife that he **will work** (or *is going to work*) diligently.
- nuntius mihi dixit urbem deletam esse = The messenger told me that the city **had been destroyed**
- nuntius mihi dixit urbem deleri = The messenger told me that the city **was being destroyed**
- nuntius mihi dixit urbem deletum iri = The messenger told me that the city **would be destroyed** (or *was going to be destroyed*)
- nuntius mihi dicit urbem deletum iri = The messenger told me that the city **will be destroyed** (or *is going to be destroyed*)

### 34.2.2 Translation Exercises

1. parentis absentibus pueri ludunt
2. multis hominibus audientibus consul orationem (*speech*) habet
3. consule loquente multi homines audiunt
4. agro vendito colonus Romam ingressus est
5. Antonius civibus dixit Brutum victum iri
6. Bruti fautores (*supporters*) crediderunt eum victurum esse
7. illi gaudebant Brutum multas legiones habere
8. sed paucis post mensibus nuntius venit et dixit Brutum victum esse

## 35 Chapter 3 Verse

UNKNOWN TEMPLATE latin

The following poem is written in Hendecasyllabic. It is an introductory, dedication poem written by the poet Gaius Valerius Catullus<sup>1</sup>.

it is commonly referred to as "Catullus 1" or by its first line.

Cui dono lepidum novum libellum  
arida modo pumice expolitum?  
Corneli, tibi: namque tu solebas  
meas esse aliquid putare nugas.  
Iam tum, cum ausus es unus Italorum  
omne aevum tribus explicare cartis...  
Doctis, Iuppiter, et laboriosis!  
Quare habe tibi quidquid hoc libelli—  
qualecumque, quod, o patrona virgo,  
plus uno maneat perenne saeclo!

Category:Latin<sup>2</sup>

### 35.1 Chapter 4: The Subjunctive Mood and Complex Sentences

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Catullus>

<sup>2</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>



## 36 The Subjunctive Mood

### 36.1 Subjunctives

The Subjunctive is one of the three different moods a Latin verb can take. The two other moods are the Indicative and the Imperative. The subjunctive is perhaps the most common and also most difficult to grasp, and there are a great number of different subjunctive uses.

The subjunctive mainly expresses doubt or potential and so is called 'jussive,' which is from 'iubere' - to command, bid. Whereas the indicative declares "this happened" or "that happened," the subjunctive expresses what could have been or what could be.

#### Examples

- "Let me go" and "May I go?" are statements of potential; the speaker is not entirely certain his/her command will be followed.
- "Were I a king, I would have a golden toilet" expresses what could be, but what, in fact, is not. Speaker is not a king, and so will not get the toilet.
- "Fortune be with you" expresses the hope/potential that Fortune will favor you. The unstated but essential word here is 'may' - "[May] Fortune be with you."

"If this *were* to happen," or "May this happen!" or "I ask you to make this happen" are all possible uses of the subjunctive.

There are four subjunctives: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect. There are no subjunctives in the future tense, which already incorporates an element of doubt.

#### 36.1.1 The Present Subjunctive

The present subjunctive is similar to the present indicative, except marked by a change of the theme vowel.

*present stem + theme vowel change + ending*

#### Form

In the present subjunctive, the theme vowel for every conjugation changes; in effect, the first conjugation masquerades as the second conjugation and all the other conjugations take on the appearance of the first.

|                 |          |         |           |
|-----------------|----------|---------|-----------|
| 1st Conjugation | <i>a</i> | becomes | <i>e</i>  |
| 2nd Conjugation | <i>e</i> | becomes | <i>ea</i> |
| 3rd Conjugation | <i>e</i> | becomes | <i>a</i>  |
| 3rd -io and 4th | <i>i</i> | becomes | <i>ia</i> |

Some ways to remember this are in the following collapsed table.

**Show**

She wears a giant diamond We beat a liar. We beat all liars. We eat a friar Never  
Fear a Liar Let's eat caviar. She wears a diamond. We eat caviar We Fear a liar She  
Wears a tiara We beat a giant. She reads a diary. She wears a diamond tiara. Let's  
beat that giant. Few Fear Fat Friars. Her Breasts are giant. Clem Steams Clams in  
Siam

### 36.1.2 Example Conjugation

*porto, portare, portavi, portatus* (1st conjugation - to carry)

#### Present Indicative

This is the present active indicative form of *portare*, which has already been covered.

|        |          |
|--------|----------|
| porto  | portamus |
| portas | portatis |
| portat | portant  |

Remember the join vowels.

#### Present Subjunctive

The present active subjunctive of *portare* would be conjugated as follows:

|        |          |
|--------|----------|
| portem | portemus |
| portes | portetis |
| portet | portent  |

Notice:

- The *-a-* vowel has changed to an *-e-*.
- The personal endings *-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt* are used, as is done for regular indicative verbs.

#### Present Subjunctive of Esse

The present active subjunctive of *sum, esse*, the verb "to be", is conjugated as follows:

|     |       |
|-----|-------|
| sim | simus |
| sis | sitis |
| sit | sint  |

Unlike the conjugation of the present active indicative form, the present subjunctive is regular. The same personal endings are affixed to *si-*.

#### *Present Subjunctive of Posse*

|        |          |
|--------|----------|
| possim | possimus |
| possis | possitis |
| possit | possint  |

Translates as... "May (I/You/He/We/You/They) be able"

### 36.1.3 Imperfect Subjunctive

The imperfect subjunctive is formed by adding the personal endings *-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt* to the present infinitive (often the second principal part).( or passive endings *-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -mini, -ntur*. In other words, for

*voco, vocare, vocavi, vocatum*

The imperfect subjunctives are formed thus:

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| vocarem | vocaremus |
| vocares | vocaretis |
| vocaret | vocarent  |

For deponent verbs, whose second principal part is the passive infinitive (e.g., *conari, vereri, pati, expediri*) a pseudo present infinitive is used (e.g, *conare, verere, patere, expedire*; although these forms do not exist as stand-alone infinitives, they actually ARE the singular imperatives for these deponent verbs)

The imperfect subjunctive of the verb to be (*sum, esse*) is conjugated regularly, as are ALL irregular verbs, e.g.: *possem, vellem, nollem, ferrem, irem*)

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| essem | essemus |
| esses | essetis |
| esset | essent  |

## 36.2 Uses of the Subjunctive

Verbs in the subjunctive mood may assume special meaning in specific constructions.

### 36.2.1 Volitive or Optative Clauses

Subjunctives in independent clauses are often translated as volitive/optative (that is, as a "wish".) Volitives/optatives show an intention for an action to occur; e.g. "amet" may be translated in volitive/optative context as "may he love"

### **Hortatory**

A suggestion or command in first person (most often plural); e.g. "cedamus" as an hortatory subjunctive is "let us depart"

### **Jussive**

A suggestion or command in third person; e.g. "cedat" as a jussive subjunctive is "let her depart"; "deprehendatur" = "Let him be seized"

### **Potential**

The potential or possibility of something happening, in any person: (Fortasse) te amem. "Perhaps I may love you."

**All of these Subjunctive types can be used in an independent (main) clause.** Note that all can be translated with "let" or "may"; the differences lie in how English will represent the subjunctive verb:

Wish (Volitive): May we be friends forever! Hortatory (Suggestion): Let us be friends! Jussive (Command): Let them be friends! Potential (Possibility): They may be friends; we may be friends; you may be friends.

## **36.2.2 Purpose Clauses**

A purpose clause is a dependent clause used, as the name shows, to show purpose. Often initiated by an indicative verb, the clause contains a subjunctive verb in either the present or imperfect tense. Present and imperfect verbs in purpose clauses should be translated with the auxiliary verbs "may" and "might," respectively. For example, "Marcus urbem condidit ut regeret" should be translated as "Marcus built the city so that he would rule." These appear frequently in Latin.

Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>

## 37 The Uses of the Subjunctive

The subjunctive mood has several uses in Latin, the most notable of which are:

|   |
|---|
| First Person Exhortations<br>Purpose Clauses<br>Result Clauses<br>Indirect Commands |
|---|

### 37.1 First Person Exhortations (Hortatory Subjunctive)

#### 37.1.1 Definition, Common Usage and Expression in Latin

An exhortation is a statement which expresses a wish. In English, the most common exhortation is "let's go". Other possibilities are "would go", "should go" and "may go". In Latin, these statements are equally as often used and are expressed in the present subjunctive active tense.

#### 37.1.2 Examples

*Festinemus ad forum* - Let's hurry to the forum

*Roma discedamus* - Let's leave Rome

*Roma non discedam, nam mea familia ibi vivit.* - I should not leave Rome, for my family lives there. (Also, "I will not leave" -- the form is ambiguous.)

*Cenemus!* - Let us dine!

*Cenarem tecum si laborem perficerem*<sup>12</sup> - I would dine with you if I should finish my work.

---

1 Note that in

2 si... (if...) clauses, the future perfect is often used where the present is in English. "I shall dine with you if I finish my work" would be "I shall dine with you if I shall have finished my work": Tecum cenam si laborem perfecero.



## 37.2 Purpose Clauses

### 37.2.1 Definition, Common Usage and Expression in Latin

A purpose clause is a clause which expresses that someone did something in order that something else might happen. In English they usually contain the words **in order to** or **so that**. In Latin this concept is expressed by the words **ut** and **ne** followed by the a verb in the subjunctive mood. *Ut* means "so that" or "in order to" and *ne* means "lest." In purpose clauses, only forms of the imperfect (following the secondary sequence of tenses) and present (for the primary sequence) are used.

### 37.2.2 Examples

*Quintus donum Scintillae dedit ut eum amaret* - Quintus gave Scintilla a gift so that she would love him. (The imperfect subjunctive is used to indicate a "present/future" time relationship with the perfect main verb, with pluperfect being the only other option, indicating a past time relationship).

*Fabius equos domum duxit ne tempestate timerentur* - Fabius brought the horses home lest they be frightened by the storm.

*Marcus Graeciam fugit ut matrem suam Romae inveniret* - Marcus fled Greece to find his mother in Rome.

## 37.3 Result Clauses

### 37.3.1 Definition, Common Usage and Expression in Latin

Result clauses state that something occurred as a result of something else happening. For a positive result, use *ut*. For a negative result, use *ut... non*.

### 37.3.2 Examples

*Sextus tam iratus erat ut fratrem interficere vellet* - Sextus was so angry that he wished to kill his brother.

*Horatia tam laeta erat ut lacrimaret* - Horatia was so happy that she cried.

*Caesar tam potus erat ut Galliam oppugnare non posset* - Caesar was so drunk that he couldn't attack Gaul.

*Milo tam defessus erat ut in via dormiret* - Milo was so tired that he slept on the road.

## 37.4 Indirect Commands

### 37.4.1 Definition, Common Usage and Expression in Latin

An indirect command is a statement like the following: "He ordered her to do x". The English equivalent words are "**to**" or "**that they should**". It can also take the form of "I am ordering you to do x", as opposed to the imperative "DO X!". Several verbs in Latin take the subjunctive mood with indirect commands:

1. rogo, rogare, rogavi, rogatum - to ask
2. persuadeo, persuadere, persuasi, persuasum - to persuade
3. impero, imperare, -imperavi, imperatum - to order
4. peto, petere petivi, petitum - to seek, ask for

These verbs use an *ut/ne* + the subjunctive construction.

### 37.4.2 Examples

*Imperator militibus imperavit ut castra caperent* - The general ordered the soldiers to capture the camp

*Eum rogo ut navem emat* - I am asking him to buy the ship.

*Mater liberis imperavit ne in horto currerent* - The mother asked her children not to run in the garden.

## 37.5 Indirect questions

### 37.5.1 Definition, Common Usage and Expression in Latin

The subjunctive is used in indirect questions. For example, the question 'What are you doing?' is direct, while "He asked what I was doing" is indirect. In Latin, the verb in the clause containing the indirect question must be in the subjunctive.

### 37.5.2 Examples

*Imperator milites rogat si castra ceperint* - The general asks the soldiers if they captured the camp.

*Eum rogo quid faciat* - I am asking him what he is doing.

*Magister pueros rogat utrum laborent an ludant* - The teacher asks the boys whether they are working or playing.

## 37.6 Not bene!



## 38 The Subjunctive Imperfect

The conjugation of the subjunctive imperfect active follows a simple rule. The verb in its infinitive form, that is, the second principle part, (amare, to love, for example) simply has the subjunctive endings appended onto it as follows:

ego amarem

tu amares

is amaret

nos amaremus

vos amaretis

ei amarent

the passive voice is formed by the addition of passive voice endings onto the infinitive stem

ego amarer

tu amareris

is amaretur

nos amaremur

vos amaremini

ei amarentur

### 38.1 Application

The imperfect subjunctive is only used for complex syntactic constructions; cum clauses and indirect questions and the like. Rarely, if ever, does it stand alone.

#### 38.1.1 Because/Cum

One application is in its use of 'cum' in the sense of 'because' as a clause. e.g.

**Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent, Helvetii se in montem receperunt.**

When(Because) the Helvetis could not sustain/resist our attacks for long, they retreated to the mountains.

Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>

## 39 The Subjunctive Passive Verbs

### 39.1 Passive Subjunctive System

Having examined Lessons 15 and 23, forming the passive subjunctive should be quite simple.

#### 39.1.1 Present

Modify the verb stem appropriately with a vowel change (as learned in Lesson 15), then add the present passive endings (Lesson 23).

|          |           |          |           |           |
|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| parer    | manear    | regar    | capiar    | audiar    |
| pareris  | manearis  | regaris  | capiaris  | audiares  |
| paretur  | maneatur  | regatur  | capiatur  | audiatur  |
| paremur  | maneamur  | regamur  | capiamur  | audiamur  |
| paremini | maneamini | regamini | capiamini | audiamini |
| parentur | maneantur | regantur | capiantur | audiantur |

#### 39.1.2 Imperfect

The passive endings added to the present active infinitive.

|            |            |            |            |            |
|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| pararer    | manerer    | regerer    | caperer    | audirer    |
| parareris  | manereris  | regereris  | capereris  | audireris  |
| pararetur  | maneretur  | regeretur  | caperetur  | audiretur  |
| pararemur  | maneremur  | regeremur  | caperemur  | audiremur  |
| pararemini | maneremini | regeremini | caperemini | audiremini |
| parentur   | manerentur | regerentur | caperentur | audirentur |

Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>



## 40 The Subjunctive Perfects

The conjugation of the perfect subjunctive active consists of: the perfect stem + "eri" + the standard active endings (-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt). An example conjugation of the first conjugation verb *paro*, *parāre* is as follows:

*parāverim*

*parāverīs*

*parāverit*

*parāverīmus*

*parāverītis*

*parāverint*

The conjugation of the pluperfect subjunctive active consists of: the perfect stem + "isse" + the standard active endings. An example conjugation of the first conjugation verb *paro*, *parāre* is as follows:

*parāvissem*

*parāvissēs*

*parāvisset*

*parāvissēmus*

*parāvissētis*

*parāvissent*



Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>

## 41 The Subjunctive Perfect Passive Verbs



## 42 Subjunctive Passive Verbs

### 42.1 Subjunctive Passive Perfect

Subjunctive passive verbs form from the 4th principle part as shown in the example below.

The verb's third principle part, e.g. in the word impedire(to obstruct): impedio, impedire, **impedivi**, impeditus; gains the passive ending for the appropriate person.

This is an example of the Subjunctive Passive in the perfect tense. muto, mutare, mutavi, mutatum -- to change

To make the verb into a perfect passive, take the fourth principle part, make it agree with the subject in gender, number, and case, and then add in the appropriate form of esse. In the perfect, we use the present form of esse, and specifically the subjunctive present(sim, sis, sit, simus, sitis, sint.)

For example, Do you know *what has been done to him?* would be made into: scis quid eum factum sit?

|                 |                         |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Singular</i> |                         |
| mutatus sim     | I have been changed.    |
| mutatus sis     | You have been changed.  |
| mutatus sit     | He has been changed.    |
| <i>Plural*</i>  |                         |
| mutati simus    | We have been changed.   |
| mutati sitis    | You have been changed.  |
| mutati sint     | They have been changed. |

- Note well that in the plural, the word "mutatus" becomes "mutati," thus taking on the plural nominative. Remember that the perfect passive verbs require the fourth participle to agree in gender and number!

#### 42.1.1 Exercises

**In this section, it is only truly necessary to translate the italicized portion. The rest exists in order to make the subjunctive necessary.**

the children were so bad that they *have been scolded*. (Children- Liberi; To scold- vitupero, vituperare, vituperavi)

He asked how *I was tricked*. (trick-ludo, ludere, lusi, lusus)

My parents drove to town so that now *I have been born in a hospital*. (born- cresco, crescere, crevi, cretus; Hospital- valetudinarium, valetudinarii-n.)

## 42.2 Subjunctive Passive Pluperfect

The subjunctive passive pluperfect is very similar to the perfect, with the major difference being the way *esse* is conjugated. In specific, the word *esse* is simply given the active endings (m,s,t,mus,tis, nt)

mutavi + **isse** -->

| <i>Singular</i> |      |                   |
|-----------------|------|-------------------|
| mutatus essem   | I    | had been changed. |
| mutatus esses   | You  | had been changed. |
| mutatus esset   | He   | had been changed. |
| <i>Plural*</i>  |      |                   |
| mutati essemus  | We   | had been changed. |
| mutati essetis  | You  | had been changed. |
| mutati essent   | They | had been changed. |

Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

### 42.2.1 Exercises

In these exercises, only the italicized parts require translation. The rest exist to make the subjunctive necessary. Remember, the subjunctive is not used in any but complex sentences or other rare circumstances.

Ovid wrote so much in the *Metamorphoses* that *his hand had been changed into stone*.

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>

## 43 The Gerund and Participles



## 44 Participles

**Participles** are verbs which function grammatically like adjectives. English, aided by auxiliary participles, is able have participle phrases in many tenses. Latin has participles that do not have auxiliary supplementary participles. This limits the usage of the participle in Latin, according to some wiki-scholars of Classical Studies.

Example 1

|         |                    |             |
|---------|--------------------|-------------|
| English | (the) walking      | man         |
| Latin   | ambulans           | vir         |
|         | Present Participle | Substantive |

### 44.1 Present Active Participles

Present participles are formed by adding -ns to the stem of the verb.

Forming the Present Imperfect Participle

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| 1st Conjugation | Infinitive: amare<br>Stem: ama<br>Present Imperfect Participle: amans     |
| 2nd Conjugation | Infinitive: monere<br>Stem: mone<br>Present Imperfect Participle: monens  |
| 3rd Conjugation | Infinitive: regere<br>Stem: rege<br>Present Imperfect Participle: regens  |
| 4th Conjugation | Infinitive: audire<br>Stem: audi<br>Present Imperfect Participle: audiens |

Present Participles are declined like 3rd declension adjectives. In cases besides the nominative, the -s becomes -t.

Examples:

1. ferens, ferentis 2. capiens, capientis 3. ens, entis

#### 44.1.1 Exercises

Form the Present Participle and translate of the following Latin verbs:



- meto, messui, messum, ere
- metuo, metum, ui, ere
- milito, avi, atum, are
- postulo, avi, atum, are
- sulco, avi, sulcum, are
- iacio, ieci, iactum, ere

### 44.1.2 Uses

The examples will show participles of the verb *amo*, *amare*, *amavi*, *amatum* (to love).

- **present active**: base + 'ns.' This forms a two-termination 3rd declension adjective. In the case of *amare*, the participle is *amans*, *amantis* (loving).
- **perfect passive**: fourth principle part, with appropriate first or second declension endings: *amatus*, *-a*, *-um*.
- **future active**: fourth principle part, minus 'm', add 'rus, -a, -um' This forms a 1st-2nd declension adjective: *amaturus*, *-a*, *-um* (about to love).

In deponent verbs, the perfect passive participle is formed in the same way as in regular verbs. However, since the nature of the deponent verb is passive in form and active in meaning, the participle is translated actively.

Remember that participles are adjectives, and therefore must be declined to agree with the noun which they modify in case, number and gender.

## 44.2 Gerund

The gerund is a verbal noun which is used to refer to the **action** of a verb. For example: ars **scribendi** = the art of **writing**. The gerund is declined as a second declension neuter noun. It is formed by adding the thematic vowel used in the imperfect and then -ndum.

audio, audire  
audiendum

capio, capere  
capiendum

rego, regere  
regendum

video, videre  
videndum

amo, amare  
amandum

**Verb**  
**Gerund**

### Meanings of the gerund

- Genitive: ars legendi - The art of reading / to read
- Accusative: ad puniendum - to punish, for punishing
- Ablative: saepe canendo - through frequently singing; in legendo: while reading
- Ablative with *causa*: puniendi causa - in order to punish

## 44.3 Gerundive

The gerundive is a 1st/2nd declension adjective formed the same way as the gerund, and its function overlaps somewhat with the gerund, but otherwise differs. The literal translation of the gerundive is with "to be", eg. defendendus, -a, -um = "to be defended".

- Accusative: ad ludos fruendos - to the games to be enjoyed - to enjoy the games (Note that if this were a gerund construction, it would be ad ludis fruendum since *fruor*, -i takes the ablative case. In the gerundive construction, both noun and gerundive are governed by the preposition *ad*)
- Gerundive of obligation: Carthago delenda est - Carthage is to be destroyed - Carthage must be destroyed. Note that if there is an object (eg. Carthage is to be destroyed **by us**), it goes into the dative case.

## 45 Exercises

1. Convert the following subjunctive purpose clauses into gerund or gerundive clauses with the same meaning. For example: militabat ut patriam defenderet -> militabat ad patriam defendendum *or* militabat patriam defendendi causa *or* militabat ad patriam defendendam. Try to use each construction twice.

- casam exit ut patrem adiuvet
- mater in casam rediit ut cenam pararet
- hostes vincebant ergo scutum abieci (*I threw away my shield*) ut celerius fugerem
- in silvas currimus ut nos celemus
- hostes in silvas ineunt ut nos invenire
- Brutus Iulium Caesarem occidit ut Romam liberaret

2. Translate into Latin. For example: I must see the temple -> templum mihi videndum est

- We must build a large city.
- Julius Caesar must lead an army into Greece.
- Scipio (*Scipio, -ionis*) must defeat Hannibal.

Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>



# 46 Conditional Clauses

## 46.1 Conditional Clauses

Conditional clauses in English and Latin have the general form:

**if** (condition clause) (result clause)

Or:

(result clause) **if** (condition clause)

For example:

1. If I see anyone, I'll tell you.
2. If he was sleeping, you should not have knocked.
3. I cannot hear you if I'm sleeping.
4. I would have been sad if I had not won.

There are 3 types of conditional clauses in Latin:

1. Simple Fact (Present or Past)
2. Contrary to Fact (Present or Past)
3. Future (More or Less Vivid)

### 46.1.1 Simple Fact Conditionals

Simple fact conditionals in Latin have the general form:

**si** (condition clause in the present indicative) (result clause in the present indicative)

Or:

**si** (condition clause in the imperfect/perfect indicative) (result clause in the imperfect/perfect indicative)

**For example:**

*si diligenter laboras, bonus puer es*

If you are working diligently, you are a good boy.

*si dominum adiuvabas, bonus servus eras*

If you were helping your master, you were a good slave.

### 46.1.2 Contrary to Fact Conditionals

Contrary to fact conditionals are used if the condition clause is known to be false. For example:

If you weren't playing during class, you would be a good boy (but you were playing, so you aren't a good boy).

Contrary to fact conditionals have the general form:

si (condition clause in the imperfect subjunctive) (result clause in the imperfect subjunctive)

Or:

si (condition clause in the pluperfect subjunctive) (result clause in the pluperfect subjunctive)

**For example:**

*si matrem adiuuaret, cena parata esset*

If he were helping his mother, the dinner would be ready.

*si patrem adiuuisset, pater matrem adiuuare potuisset*

If he had helped his father, his father would have been able to help his mother.

Note how English uses **would** and **would have** for result clauses, while Latin uses the same tense as in the condition clauses.

### 46.1.3 Future Conditionals

Future conditionals are, of course, used to express conditions in the future. For example:

If you help me, I will be done faster.

Future conditionals take the following general form:

si (condition clause in the future or future perfect) (result clause in the future)

Or:

si (condition clause in the present subjunctive) (result clause in the present subjunctive)

**For example:**

*si fortiter pugnaveritis, urbs non delebitur*

If you fight bravely, the city will not be destroyed.

Note how English uses the present tense for the condition clause, while Latin uses the future or future perfect.

*si diligenter laboretis, vobis meridiē domum dimittam*

If you were to work diligently, I would dismiss you at noon.

This type of clause, known as the future less vivid (as opposed to the future more vivid which uses the future and future perfect), is used to express more improbable conditions in the future.





## 47 Revision

### Passive/Subjunctive Tenses

Passive is used to describe something like an indirect action affects you - an example is "I was being held". In Latin, it is conjugated through six parts - the present set (present, imperfect, future), and the perfect set (perfect, pluperfect, future perfect). Below is a chart you can use for endings and such.

The present tense through future tenses use the present stem. I'm using the word amo, amare, amavi, amatus - to love, so the present stem is "am".

|                       |                    |                     |
|-----------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| <b>Present</b>        |                    |                     |
| 1st person            | amor               | amāmur              |
| 2nd person            | amāris             | amāminī             |
| 3rd person            | amātur             | amantur             |
| <b>Imperfect</b>      |                    |                     |
| 1st person            | amābar             | amābāmur            |
| 2nd person            | amābāris           | amābāminī           |
| 3rd person            | amābātur           | amābantur           |
| <b>Future</b>         |                    |                     |
| 1st person            | amābor             | amābimur            |
| 2nd person            | amāberis           | amābiminī           |
| 3rd person            | amābitur           | amābuntur           |
| <b>Perfect</b>        |                    |                     |
| 1st person            | amātus, a, um sum  | amātī, ae, a sumus  |
| 2nd person            | amātus es          | amātī estis         |
| 3rd person            | amātus est         | amātī sunt          |
| <b>Pluperfect</b>     |                    |                     |
| 1st person            | amātus, a, um eram | amātī, ae, a erāmus |
| 2nd person            | amātus erās        | amātī erātis        |
| 3rd person            | amātus erat        | amātī erant         |
| <b>Future Perfect</b> |                    |                     |
| 1st person            | amātus, a, um erō  | amātī, ae, a erimus |
| 2nd person            | amātus eris        | amātī eritis        |
| 3rd person            | amātus erit        | amātī erunt         |

Hope this is all correct and helps!

Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>

## 48 Idioms

- ad unum-to a man
- aequo animo-contentedly, resignedly, patiently
- aere alieno premi-to be heavily in debt
- agere gratias-to thank
- alius aliam in partem-one in one direction, another in another
- amico aliquo uti-to be on terms of intimacy with some one
- animo tenus commoveri-to be moved to the heart



## 49 Translation

Lesson 20, as a bit of a reward is a little translation exercise from the Gospel of Saint Luke.

Exercise 1

Vocabulary

coming soon, at the moment consult your dictionary

Respondens Simon dixit: "Aestimo quia is, cui plus donavit". At ille dixit ei: "Recte iudicasti". Et conversus ad mulierem, dixit Simoni: "Vides hanc mulierem? Intravi in domum tuam: aquam pedibus meis non dedisti; haec autem lacrimis rigavit pedes meos et capillis suis tersit. Osculum mihi non dedisti haec autem, ex quo intravi non cessavit osculari pedes meos. Oleo caput meum non unxisti; haec autem unguento unxit pedes meos. Propter quod dico tibi: Remissa sunt peccata eius multa, quoniam dilexit multrum: cui autem minus dimittitur, minus diligit." Dixit autem ad illam: "Remissa sunt peccata tua". Et coeperunt, qui simul accumbebant, dicere intra se: "quis est hic, qui etiam peccata dimittit?". Dixit autem ad mulierem: Fides tua te salvam fecit; vade in pace!".

Et factum est deinceps, et ipse iter faciebat per civitatem et castekkyn oaeducabs et evangelizans regnum Dei, et Duodecim cum illo, et mulieres aliquae, quae erant curatae ab spiritibus malignis et infirmitatibus, Maria, quae vocatur Magdalene, de qua daemonia septem exierant, et Ioanna uxor Chuza procuratoris Herodis, et Sussanna et aliae multae, quae ministrabant eis de facultatibus suis.

Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>



## 50 Chapter 4 Verse

Haec est fabula De Faciebus Iani. Ianus, ut dicebatur, erat unus deorum, cui facies duae erant. Altera earum enim in futura et altera in praeterita prospiciebat.

Apollo ei olim sic dixit: "Nonne tibi facies est, qua tempus praesens spectes?" Et paulo post Ianus ita respondit:

"Mundus - orbis terrarum cyclus est similiter ac tempus est cyclicum. Et initium omnium et finem video. Omnia prospicio aeternusque sum, neque opus est porro videre, quae palam iaceant."

Diu cogitavit Apollo de verbis Iani hominesque acutissimā mente in omni orbe terrarum conquesivit eo consilio, ut ipse tam sapiens ut Ianus fieret. Postea cum quibusdam illustrissimis viris collocutus est, quo sapientior esset. Eo facto tamen unus eorum, cui Minervus nomen, Apollinem monuit, ne summam quaereret sapientiam, quam novisse nullum alium quam Ianum oportebat. Revenit autem Apollo ad Ianum eumque, ut veritatem cognosceret, ea summa rogavit.

"Intellegisne omnino quid roges?" inquit Ianus, "Si dis par fueris, omnibus iuribus privari possis."

Itaque Apollo cognovit sapientissimum omnium fuisse, a quo monitus est.

Translation below:

This is the story of the faces of Janus. Janus, as it used to be said, was one of the gods who had two faces. It was that one spied into the future while the other into the past.

Apollo once had said to him, "Have you not a face with which to see the present?" After a few moments, thus spoke Ianus:

"The world is a circle. Time is a circle. I see both the beginning and end of all living things. I am foreseeing and eternal; therefore, it is not necessary for me to see that which is lying out of sight."

Apollo thought about these words for a very long time, and thus, that he might become wise like Janus, he sought the keenest minds of the land. He then was speaking with some great men that he might become wiser. However, one, whose name was Minervus, warned him not to seek the ultimate/highest truth because it may only be known by Janus. But he returned again to ask Janus that he might obtain the truth.

"Do you even know for what you're asking? If you enter onto the same level (of the Gods), all your rights might be snatched from you," said Janus.

And so Apollo knows now that the same man who had warned him was the wisest of all.





# 51 Verse from the Gospels

< Latin<sup>1</sup>

## 51.1 A Verse From the Gospel of St. Luke

Respondens Simon dixit: "Aestimo quia is, cui plus donavit". At ille dixit ei: "Recte iudicasti". Et conversus ad mulierem, dixit Simoni: "Vides hanc mulierem? Intravi in domum tuam: aquam pedibus meis non dedisti; haec autem lacrimis rigavit pedes meos et capillis suis tersit. Osculum mihi non dedisti haec autem, ex quo intravi non cessavit osculari pedes meos. Oleo caput meum non unxisti; haec autem unguento unxit pedes meos. Propter quod dico tibi: Remissa sunt peccata eius multa, quoniam dilexit multrum: cui autem minus dimittitur, minus diligit." Dixit autem ad illam: "Remissa sunt peccata tua". Et coeperunt, qui simul accumbebant, dicere intra se: "quis est hic, qui etiam peccata dimittit?". Dixit autem ad mulierem: Fides tua te salvam fecit; vade in pace!".

Category:Latin<sup>2</sup>

## 51.2 Chapter 5: Review

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Latin>

<sup>2</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>



## 52 Revision



## 53 What is Latin?

*Parts of this introduction were taken from The Latin Language<sup>1</sup> on the Wikipedia<sup>2</sup>.*

Latin was the language originally spoken in the region around the city of Rome called Latium. It gained great importance as the formal language of the Roman Empire.

All Romance languages descend from a Latin parent, and many words in English<sup>3</sup> and other languages today are based on Latin roots. Moreover, Latin was a *lingua franca*, the learned language for scientific and political affairs in Europe, for more than one and a half thousand years, being eventually replaced by French<sup>4</sup> in the 18th century and English by the middle of the 20th. Latin remains the formal language of the Roman Catholic Church to this day, and as such is the official national language of the Vatican.

Romance languages are not derived from Classical Latin, the language spoken by Caesar and Cicero, but rather from Vulgar Latin, the language spoken by the common people, or *vulgus*, of Rome. Classical Latin and Vulgar Latin (Romance) differ (for example) in that Romance had distinctive stress whereas Classical had distinctive length of vowels. In Italian<sup>5</sup> and Sardo logudorese, there is distinctive length of consonants and stress, in Spanish<sup>6</sup> only distinctive stress, and in French even stress is no longer distinctive.

Another major distinction between Classical and Romance is that modern Romance languages, excluding Romanian<sup>7</sup>, have lost their case endings (suffixes at the end of the word used in place of prepositions) in most words (some pronouns being exceptions). Romanian is still equipped with several cases (though some, notably the ablative, are no longer represented).

It is also important to note that Latin is, for the most part, an inflected language — meaning that the endings change to show how the word is being used in the sentence.

---

1 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Latin>  
2 <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Main%20Page>  
3 <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/English>  
4 <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/French>  
5 <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Italian>  
6 <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Spanish>  
7 <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Romanian>



## 54 Introduction to the Latin Language

### 54.1 Simple and Compound Words

In Latin, words are either:

- **simple** (words that consist of only one part). For example:

| Latin | English |
|-------|---------|
| eo    | I go    |
| fero  | I carry |
| do    | I give  |

- **compound** (words that consist of more than one part, for example, a root word combined with a prefix). For example:

| Latin     | English        |
|-----------|----------------|
| abeo      | I go away      |
| transfero | I carry across |
| reddo     | I give back    |

### 54.2 Word Parts

Inflected words (i.e., words having ending- or spelling-changes according to their grammatical functions in the sentence) have a **stem** and a **root**.

The Stem

The stem is the part of the word to which various suffixes are added. The final suffix determines either the role of the word in the sentence (for example, when a Roman slave wished to address his *dominus* (master), he used the vocative form *domine* -- equivalent to "O master" in English) or the person involved in the action (for example, "I dominate" may be expressed as "domin-or", and "they dominate" as "domin-antur"). In these cases, *domin-* is the stem and *-us*, *-e*, *-or* and *-antur* are suffixes. The addition of such suffixes is called *inflection*. This is discussed further in the Summary<sup>1</sup>.

The Root

The root is the part of the word that carries the essential meaning. For example the stem of *agito* (I drive onward) is *agit-*, whose root is *ag* (do, drive), which is in common to words of

---

1 Chapter 56 on page 221



similar meaning: *ago* (I do, drive), *agmen* (that which is driven, such as a flock), etc. Notice the essential difference between a root and a stem. To the root "ag" has been added a suffix "(i)to-" which denotes frequency of action (so "agit-" means to do or drive more than once, hence "agit-o", I agitate, I keep (something) moving, I urge, I impel).

In contrast, English uses word order more than inflection to determine the function of a word within a sentence. English also uses words like pronouns (I, she, etc.) and prepositions (to, at, etc.) where Latin generally prefers inflexions. Thus "dom-i" (noun -- "at home"), "ag-unt" (verb -- "they do/drive").

### Primitives

Primitives occur when both the stem and the root are the same. For example, in the word *agere* (to do, drive) both the stem and the root are the same: "ag-".

### Derivatives

Derivatives occur when the root or stem is modified. For example, the stem *flamm-* from the noun *flamma* has the root "flag" ("blaze"), "nosco" (I know) from the verb "noscere" has the root "gno-" ("know").

### Suffixes

Latin attaches suffixes ("endings") to stems to turn them into words (most stems and roots cannot be used in sentences without an ending). This inflection is essential to forming Latin sentences. The various suffixes and their translations will be learned in the later lessons.

## 55 Types of Words used in Latin

### 55.1 Nouns

A noun (Latin: *nomen*) is "something perceived or conceived by the mind."

There are two kinds of nouns: Substantives and Pronouns.

1. Substantive (*nomen substantivum*) is a name simply denoting something perceived or conceived: *psittacus* - the parrot, *nix* - the snow, *virtus* - virtue.
2. Pronoun (*pronomen*) is a word used in place of a *substantivum*, usually when the *substantivum* is already known: *ea* - she, *ille* - that man

Nouns have changing endings on the stem (known as declension) and three incidents: number, gender and case. Number concerns whether the thing referred to is singular or plural (and the ending shows this); gender classifies a substantive as masculine, feminine or neuter (this determines how the endings of adjectives and pronouns behave) and case (where the ending must show how the noun fits in to the sentence). Adjectives and Pronouns must agree in all incidents when they refer to a substantive.

### 55.2 Verbs

Verbs (*verba*) express an action or a state of being, e.g., *ago* (I do), *dixit* (he said), *venis* (you come). "Conjugation" is the term for adding inflections to verb stems to indicate person (first, second or third), number (singular or plural), tense (present, future, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect or future perfect), voice (active or passive), and mood (indicative, subjunctive or imperative).

A verb can be either *finite* or *infinite*:

1. Finite verbs (*verba finita*) are inflected and have a subject, e.g., I run, you run, he runs, they drive, the computer is turned on.
2. The infinite verbs (*verba infinita*) are not inflected and have no subject, e.g. to run, to drive, to turn on, to have drawn. *Participles*, which are inflected as substantives rather than as verbs, may also be considered infinite, e.g., the *running* boy.

### 55.3 Modifiers

1. Adjectives (*adiectiva*) are used to describe nouns. They indicate a quality perceived or conceived as inherent in, or attributed to, something denoted. E.g., *vir magnus* (the great man), *puella pulchra* (the fair girl)
2. Adverbs (*adverbia*) are similar to adjectives, except that they are used to qualify verbs, adjectives or other adverbs, rather than nouns. In practice, they restrict the meaning of the verb or adjective by specifying how or how much. E.g., *curro celeriter* (I run quickly), *pugnat fortiter* (he fights bravely), "vere jucundus est" (he's really nice), "incredibile callida est" (she's incredibly clever).

### 55.4 Other

Particles are uninflected words that provide extra meaning.

1. Prepositions (*praepositiones*) are little words which tell you how one thing (noun) is behaving in relation to another thing ("the duck was near the pond", "she went towards the wood"). In Latin, the noun that follows a preposition takes a particular ending (called a "case"), depending on the nature of the relationship, or on the nature of the preposition itself. E.g., *ad* (by), *in* (in), *sub* (under). What all this means is that a preposition is a sort of adverb, telling you how something is done. For example, "you go" is a simple statement, but "you go in" suggests that you don't just "go", you go so as to enter something, and so you need a noun for the "something". In English, we might say "you go into the house". In Latin, this would be: "in domum inis". Notice the form "in domum", which means "into" the house -- you're going into it, you're not yet exactly inside it (the ending -um of "domum" is called "accusative"). When you are inside the house, what you do is "in" the house, which is "in domo" (the ending -o of "domo" is called "ablative").
2. Conjunctions (*coniunctiones*) join together clauses and sentences. E.g., *et* (and), *atque* (as well as), *sed* (but).
3. Interjections (*interiectiones*) are exclamations used to express feeling or to gain attention. E.g., *o!* (oh!) *eheu!* (alas!) *ecce!* (behold!)

### 55.5 Articles

Latin has **NO articles** (words for 'the' and 'a'). When translating Latin into English, insert a 'the' or 'a' when appropriate.

## 56 Summary

### Parts of Speech

#### Inflected

*Substantives:* things perceived or conceived

*Adjectives:* indicate a quality perceived or conceived as inherent of something in the substantive

*Pronouns:* nouns used in place of substantives and adjectives

*Verbs:* mark the beginning of an independent clause<sup>1</sup>. The verb in Latin is inflected so that we know the subject ("I learn"), and its tense (to what general or specific time the clause relates to). We call the inflection of a verb **conjugation**

#### Uninflected

*Adverbs:* describe adjectives, verbs, and other adverbs

*Prepositions:* help nouns define their relations to other nouns

*Conjunctions:* Join clauses and sentences

*Interjection:* exclamation

### 56.1 Pronunciation

Latin pronunciation has varied somewhat over the course of its long history, and there are some differences between Classical Latin, as spoken in the Roman Republic and Roman Empire, and Medieval or Ecclesiastical Latin, as spoken in the Middle ages and in the Catholic Church. This text focuses on the classical pronunciation.

|    |   |
|----|---|
| a  | /a/, about, between ah and uh, ad is pronounced almost like "odd"         |
| e  | /ɛ/, get or bed   |
| i  | /ɪ/, hit, pin, in   |
| i  | (Before vowel and not accented) /j/, Y as in yes                          |
| j  | Sometimes used in place of the letter I when making a /j/ sound, as above |
| o  | /ɔ/, on, cot  |
| u  | /ʊ/, put, foot  |
| ā  | /a:/, father  |
| ē  | sounds like saying the letter "A", /e:/, hay                              |
| ī  | sounds like saying the letter "E", /i:/, eat                              |
| ō  | sounds like saying the letter "O", /o:/, clover                           |
| ae | (Diphthong) sounds like saying the letter "I", /aɪ/, aisle                |

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/clause>

|     |  |
|-----|--|
| au  | (Diphthong) /aʊ/, brown, how   |
| oe  | (Diphthong) /ɔɪ/, oil, boy   |
| ou  | (Diphthong) oo   |
| ui  | (Diphthong) we   |
| bs  | (At the end of word) the B sounds a P  |
| bt  | (At the end of a word) the B sounds a P  |
| ch  | /kʰ/, pronounced separately as in archaic, not like in church  |
| gn  | /nɲn/ hang <b>n</b> ail, sing <b>n</b> ow  |
| ph  | up <b>h</b> ill, never sounds an F in philosophy   |
| th  | Pronounced separately as in pot <b>h</b> ole, never like this or theater   |
| c   | /k/, always hard as in cat   |
| g   | /g/, always hard as in get, never soft like adage  |
| r   | Rolled like in the Spanish and Italian languages   |
| s   | Always voiceless as in see, never voiced as in ease  |
| v   | /w/, equivalent to an English W, never sounding an English V (sounds U as a consonant), some texts will write the "v" as a "u" when it serves as a vowel |
| x   | Equivalent to an English Ks as in box, never like exert  |
| (y) | Rarely exists in Latin except in words borrowed from Greek   |
| (z) | Rarely exists in Latin except in words borrowed from Greek   |

Note that Latin, as written by the Romans, did not include macrons (the longmarks over long vowels) or the letters J and U. Macrons are used today as pronunciation guides and do not necessarily need to be written. The sound value of the letter U was filled by the letter V, which sounded either /w/ or /ʊ/ depending on context. Modern texts often preserve the V when it is making a /w/ sound and change it to a U when making a /ʊ/ sound. The letter J is sometimes used in modern times (this Wikibook not included) when the letter I is being used in diphthongs.

## 56.2 Declension Tables

The following tables will be both referenced and explained in all of the following sections, and hence are placed here.

| Singular Nouns                    |         |           |             |           |         |  |
|-----------------------------------|---------|-----------|-------------|-----------|---------|--|
| Declension (Gender)               | 1st (F) | 2nd (M/N) | 3rd (M/F/N) | 4th (M/N) | 5th (F) |  |
| <b>Nominative</b><br>Subject      | puella  | servus    | rēx         | gradus    | rēs     |  |
| <b>Genitive</b><br>Possessive     | puellae | servī     | rēgis       | gradūs    | rēī     |  |
| <b>Dative</b><br>Indirect Object  | puellae | servō     | rēgī        | graduī    | rēī     |  |
| <b>Accusative</b><br>Object       | puellam | servum    | rēgem       | gradum    | rēm     |  |
| <b>Ablative</b>                   | puellā  | servō     | rēge        | gradu     | rē      |  |
| <b>Vocative</b><br>Direct Address | puella  | serve     | rēx         | gradus    | rēs     |  |

Note that nouns in the 3rd declension nominative can have any ending, hence why none is given in bold.

| Plural Nouns        |         |           |             |           |         |
|---------------------|---------|-----------|-------------|-----------|---------|
| Declension (Gender) | 1st (F) | 2nd (M/N) | 3rd (M/F/N) | 4th (M/N) | 5th (F) |
| Nominative          | puellae | servī     | rēgēs       | cornūs    | rēs     |



## 56.3 Grammar Part 1: Nouns and Their Role in Sentences

Noun<sup>2</sup>s in Latin are inflected<sup>3</sup>, which means that endings (also known as suffix<sup>4</sup>es or *suffices*) are appended to the end of the stem<sup>5</sup> to denote these things:

1. Number (whether the noun is singular or plural)
2. Case<sup>6</sup> of the noun (role of the noun in the sentence)
3. Gender<sup>7</sup> (the gender of the word - one of masculine, feminine, or neuter)

Most nouns in English can be modified to indicate number (cat versus cats), and many pronouns can be modified to indicate case (who versus whose) or gender (he versus she, his versus hers). Case is especially important in Latin as meaning cannot be determined by word order as it can be in English, but purely by word endings, or "inflection". Indeed, the words in a Latin sentence can appear in almost any order with little change in meaning. Two sentences with the word orders "Sam ate the orange" and "The orange ate Sam" could potentially mean the same thing in Latin, though the spellings of "orange" and "Sam" would have to change slightly to denote which was the subject (the one eating) and which was the object (the one being eaten).

It is important to note here that although the genders of many words make sense (for example, "puella", meaning a girl, is feminine) many are simply assigned and hold no real meaning. Luckily, as you will find, the gender can often be determined by the spelling of the word (words ending in "us" are almost always masculine, and words ending in "a" are almost always feminine). For many words, however, you will simply have to memorize their gender.

Adjective<sup>8</sup>s themselves must match the number, case, and gender of the noun (be it a substantive or a pronoun) they modify. If a noun is nominative singular feminine (see case table<sup>9</sup> below), then the adjective describing it must also be nominative singular feminine. If the noun is accusative plural masculine, then the adjective must be accusative plural masculine. This will be expanded on in the Adjectives<sup>10</sup> section below. The advantage of this system is that adjectives do not need to be adjacent to their respective nouns, as one would be able to tell which noun they modify by which noun they appear to agree with.

### 56.3.1 Declension

**All substantives** are part of one of 5 categories, called **declensions**. Each declension has a set of standard suffixes that indicate case and number. Usually gender is indicated by the suffix, although there are many exceptions. Therefore, you must memorize the gender of every substantive you learn.

- 
- 2 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Noun>
  - 3 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Inflected%20language>
  - 4 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/suffix>
  - 5 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/stem>
  - 6 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Declension>
  - 7 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grammatical%20gender>
  - 8 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adjective>
  - 9 Chapter 56.3.2 on page 227
  - 10 Chapter 56.4 on page 229

By familiarizing yourself with the above tables<sup>11</sup>, you could deduce that originally the suffix indicating number, case, and gender was the same for every noun. However, as the language developed, nouns with a common stem formed declensions and sounds changed. Similar processes happen continually over time, even today.

The above tables allow you to familiarize yourself with the existence of each declension, though by no means are you expected to memorize it now. Nonetheless, you will have to memorize it as you are formally introduced to individual cases and declensions in future lessons. Because of its introductory purpose, it is considerably simplified and incomplete, and therefore should not be used as a reference in the future.

Adjectives are also classed into declensions:

1. **1st/2nd declension adjectives...**

- a) ...Use 1st declension suffixes from the substantive declension table when describing feminine nouns.
- b) ...Use 2nd declension masculine suffixes from the above table when describing masculine nouns.
- c) ...Use 2nd declension neuter suffixes (*not* found in the above table) when describing neuter nouns.

2. **3rd declension adjectives** behave as 'i' stem substantives unless specified. Masculine and Feminine suffixes (which are the same) will be used if describing masculine and feminine nouns, and Neuter suffixes will be used when describing neuter nouns.

Pronouns are not part of any declension, as they are all irregular, and simply have to be memorized.

### 56.3.2 Case

Cases (Latin: *casus*) determine the role of the noun in the sentence in relation to other parts of the sentence.

There are six cases, Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative and Ablative. Vocative (Lesson 3) can be considered a sort of miniature case, generally not being accepted as a true one. Additionally, some nouns have a locative case, which will be covered later. As nominative and accusative are the most basic, these will be taught first (the rest will be covered in later lessons).

#### The Use of the Cases

(all words in bold are in the case specified in the first column)

| Case       | Role in sentence            | Example (Latin)        | Example (English)  |
|------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|--|
| Nominative | Subject (performs the verb) | <b>Vir</b> lupum vult. | <b>The man</b> wants a wolf.                                   |
| Genitive   | Description and possession  | Lupus <b>virī</b> est. | It is the <b>man's</b> wolf/It is the wolf <b>of the man</b> . |

<sup>11</sup> Chapter 56.2 on page 222

**The Use of the Cases****(all words in bold are in the case specified in the first column)**

| Case       | Role in sentence   | Example (Latin)              | Example (English)                   |
|------------|--|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Dative     | Indirect object<br>(receives the direct object)                    | <b>Lupō</b> dedit vir.       | The man gave to <b>the wolf</b> .   |
| Accusative | Direct object (receives the action of the verb)                    | Vir <b>lupum</b> videt.      | The man sees <b>the wolf</b> .      |
| Ablative   | Various (modify or limit nouns by ideas of where, when, how, etc.) | Ā quō datum? Ā <b>virō</b> . | By whom given?<br><b>By a man</b> . |
| Vocative   | Direct address<br>(speaking to somebody directly)                  | Salvē, <b>Brute!</b>         | Hello, <b>Brutus!</b>               |

**56.3.3 Gender**

**All substantives**, including inanimate objects, have a particular gender (genera), which is either masculine, feminine, or neuter.

For example, Vir, "a man," is masculine. Marītus, "a husband," is also masculine. Puella, "a girl," is feminine. Māter, "a mother," is feminine. Even inanimate objects are assigned gender, including all the moons, stars, trees, tools, and so forth. Logic will give you little help in determining what the genders of inanimate objects are, and with many nouns memorization is required. Luckily, for many nouns, the spelling of the word indicates the gender.

Certain rules may be utilized to determine the gender of an inanimate substantive. Declension is a good indication of gender, especially for 1st and 2nd declension substantives. 1st declension substantives (substantives with an -a suffix) are usually feminine and second declension nouns (substantives with an -us suffix) are usually masculine or neuter. There are a few exceptions, and they will have to be learned. 3rd declension nouns can be either masculine, feminine or neuter (thus the gender will often have to be memorized). 4th declension nouns are usually masculine, sometimes neuter while 5th declension nouns are usually feminine.

1st/2nd declension adjectives alternate the set of endings depending on the gender of noun it describes (see above: Agreement of the Gender of Nouns and the Adjective). If the adjective describes a feminine noun, the adjective must use 1st declension endings, if the adjective describes a masculine noun, the adjective must use 2nd declension masculine endings, if the adjective describes a neuter noun the adjective must use 2nd declension neuter endings.

3rd declension adjectives use the same set of endings for masculine and feminine nouns. However, a slightly different set of endings are used when describing neuter nouns.

## 56.4 Adjectives

As stated above, adjectives must match the gender, number, and case of the noun (be the noun a substantive, or a pronoun) they modify. However, there are many occasions where logic cannot be used to determine the gender of inanimate objects, as genders are assigned arbitrarily when the noun has no literal gender. Furthermore, the declension of the noun, often determined by the spelling, can in turn be used to determine the gender, especially for the 1st and 2nd. However, this is never the case for the third declension, as the declension itself is not primarily assigned to any gender and the spelling of the nominative ("default") stem is random, leaving you with no hints.

A noun and its adjective must also be in the same case. Otherwise, it is impossible to tell which nouns pair up to their respective adjectives in a sentence, as the words in a Latin sentence can appear in any order. See the examples below.

|Notice how "magna" changes to "magnae" to agree with the pluralized "puellae".

| Latin                           | English       |
|---------------------------------|---------------|
| Puella (nominative sing., fem.) | Girl          |
| Puella magna                    | The big girl  |
| Puellae (nominative pl., fem.)  | Girls         |
| Puellae magnae                  | The big girls |

|Notice how "magna" becomes "magnus" to agree with the masculine word "servus". Also notice that "magnus" changes to "magnum" to agree with the noun it's describing in case, though do not concern yourself with the difference between cases for the time being.

| Latin                          | English       |
|--------------------------------|---------------|
| Servus (nominative sing, mas.) | Slave         |
| Servus magnus                  | The big slave |
| Servum (accusative sing, mas.) | Slave         |
| Servum magnum                  | The big slave |

|Notice that "magna" is feminine because "arbor" is feminine, despite that it does not end in "a" like "puella". The word "arbor" is one of the situations where you will simply have to memorize the gender.

| Latin                         | English      |
|-------------------------------|--------------|
| Arbor (nominative sing, fem.) | Tree         |
| Arbor magna                   | The big tree |

## 56.5 Recapitulation

- Declensions are used to categorize nouns in groups. There are 5 declensions total.
- Each of the five declensions has a distinct set of endings which are appended to nouns of that declension.

- The endings indicate the case and number when appended to the stem of a noun.
- A substantive may use only the endings of the declension of which it is a part.
- Each substantive has a predefined gender which almost never changes and is separate from the suffix.
- Adjectives are a part of the 1st/2nd declension and 3rd declension.
- Adjectives use the gender of the noun that they modify.

**Therefore:**

- An adjective of the 1st/2nd declension uses 1st declension endings when describing a feminine noun, a 2nd declension masculine ending when describing masculine noun, and 2nd declension neuter when describing a neuter noun.
- An adjective of the 3rd declension uses the same set of endings when describing masculine and feminine nouns and another set of endings when describing neuter nouns. (Actually, there are 3-termination, 2-termination, and 1-termination 3rd declension adjectives. If the adjective is 3-termination, e.g., acer (f. sing.), acris (m. sing.), acer (n. sing.), acres (f. pl.), acres (m. pl.), or acria (n. pl.), then use the appropriate ending; if the adjective is 2-termination, then one termination will be masculine/feminine and the other neuter; if the adjective is 1-termination, the common form is used.)

Before you proceed to the next lesson, complete the exercises below so you will be able to apply this knowledge to Latin.

## 56.6 Exercises

### Exercise: Questions

1. What are the three genders?
2. What is the number (singular/plural) of the following English words:
  - a) cow
  - b) dogs
  - c) genders
  - d) adjective
  - e) children
  - f) slice
  - g) mice
  - h) geese
3. Describe the relationship between an adjective and the noun which it modifies.
4. How many declensions are there?
5. Determine the declension of each Latin word:
  - puella (*girl*)
  - ianua (*door*)
  - amicus (*friend*)
  - ludus (*game*)
  - casa (*house*)
  - rex (*king*)

6. What gender are 1st declension substantives mostly?
7. What genders are 2nd declension substantives mostly?
8. What grammatical features of a word can be determined by looking at its ending?

**Solution**

1. Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter
2. What is the number (singular/plural) of the following English words:
  - a) S
  - b) P
  - c) P
  - d) S
  - e) P
  - f) S
  - g) P
  - h) P
3. The adjective takes on the case and gender (but not always the declension) of the noun it describes
4. Five
5. Determine the declension of each Latin word:
  - a) 1st
  - b) 1st
  - c) 2nd
  - d) 2nd
  - e) 1st
  - f) 3rd
6. Feminine
7. Masculine
8. It varies slightly from word-to-word; Declension/Case, Number, and sometimes Gender.



## 57 Exercises

### 57.1 Exercises

**Exercise: Give the accusative singular.**

Give the accusative singular for:

1. lud-us
2. magn-us
3. triclini-um
4. bell-um
5. puell-a
6. serv-us
7. ager

**Solution**

1. ludum
2. magnum
3. triclinium
4. bellum
5. puellam
6. servum
7. agrum

**Exercise: Give the accusative plural.**

Give the accusative plural for:

1. lud-us
2. magn-us
3. triclini-um
4. bell-um
5. puell-a
6. serv-us
7. ager

**Solution**

1. ludos
2. magnos
3. triclinia
4. bella
5. puellas



6. servos
7. agros

**Exercise: Give the nominative singular.**

Give the nominative singular for:

1. bon-ī
2. bell-a
3. triclini-a
4. puell-am
5. agr-ōs
6. serv-ōs
7. puell-ae

**Solution**

1. bonus
2. bellum
3. triclinium
4. puella
5. ager
6. servus
7. puella

| Lesson Vocabulary     |              |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| Latin                 | English      |
| vendit                | he/she sells |
| videt                 | he/she sees  |
| amat                  | he/she loves |
| cist-a -ae (f.)       | box          |
| ferox, ferocis (m/f.) | wild         |
| ager (m.)             | field        |
| bell-um (n.)          | war          |
| serv-us (m.)          | slave        |

## 57.2 Grammar: The Accusative

As you learned in the last lesson, the verb 'esse' (to be) usually takes the nominative case, because then the word after it is a complement. Most other verbs take the 'accusative' case.

In a sentence, the accusative is the "what" - in English grammar, this is known as the direct object.

**For example:** The girl sells the box.

What did the girl sell? The box. Thus, box is the direct object, and when we translate it into Latin:

**Example**

|                     |            |        |            |
|---------------------|------------|--------|------------|
| <i>English:</i>     | The girl   | sells  | the box.   |
| <i>Latin:</i>       | Puella     | vendit | cistam.    |
| <i>Explanation:</i> | NOMINATIVE | VERB   | ACCUSATIVE |

Cistam, then, is in the accusative, because it is the direct object.

Again, when an adjective describes a noun in the accusative case, the adjective must agree in number, case, and gender.

**Example**

|                     |            |        |                         |                      |
|---------------------|------------|--------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>English:</i>     | The girl   | sells  | the big                 | box.                 |
| <i>Latin:</i>       | Puella     | vendit | magnam                  | cistam.              |
| <i>Explanation:</i> | NOMINATIVE | VERB   | ADJECTIVE<br>ACCUSATIVE | NOUN AC-<br>CUSATIVE |

Because Latin uses cases to mark the subject and the object of a sentence, word order does not matter. Consider:

|                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| puer puellam videt  | The boy sees the girl |
| puerum puella videt | The girl sees the boy |
| puellam puer videt  | The boy sees the girl |
| puella puerum videt | The girl sees the boy |

## 57.3 Examples of Adjectives Agreeing with the Nominative and Accusative Case

**Explanation-** The *good* boy loves the *wild* dog.

*Latin:*

puer  
[The] boy

**bonus**  
**good**

amat  
[he] loves

canem (acc)  
[the] dog

**ferocem** (acc).  
**wild.**

*Bonus*, a first and second declension adjective, is masculine, nominative, and singular to agree with *puer*, the word it is describing.

*Ferocem*, a third declension adjective, is masculine, accusative, and singular to agree with *canem*. *Canem* is accusative because it is the object of *amat*.

Here is an example of plural adjectives:

**Explanation-** The *good* boys love the *wild* dogs.

*Latin:* Pueri (plur)    **boni** (plur)  
*English:* [The] boys    **good**

amant (plur)  
[they] love

canes (plur, acc)  
[the] dogs

**feroces** (plur, acc).  
**wild.**

The words *bonus* and *ferocem* become *boni* and *feroces* to agree with the plurals *pueri* and *canes*.

However, if a girl (*puella*<sup>1</sup>) happened to love that boy:

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/puella%23Latin>

**Explanation-** The *good* girl loves the *good* boy.

*Latin:*  
*English:*

Puella  
[The] girl

**bona**  
**good**

amat  
[she] loves

puerum (acc)  
[the] boy

**bonum** (acc).  
**good.**

*Bonus* must become *bona* in order to modify *puella*, which is feminine.

Finally, if the girl isn't good, but rather wild:



**Explanation-** The *wild* girl loves the *good* boy.

*Latin:*

Puella

**ferox**

amat

puerum (acc)

**bonum** (acc).

*English:*

[The] girl

**wild**

[she] loves

[the] boy

**good.**

Even though *puella* is first declension, *ferox* remains third declension. In the same way, a good lion would be *bonus leo*.

## 57.4 Exercise 3

Determine whether the adjective agrees with the substantive in all three categories: case, gender, number.

### Questions:

1. magn-us agr-ōs
2. magn-a puella
3. poet-a\* bon-us
4. magn-um serv-um
5. poet-ae\* magn-ae
6. bell-a magn-a

### Does it Agree?

- True/False  
True/False  
True/False  
True/False  
True/False  
True/False

\* *Nota bene*: Poeta (meaning poet) is a masculine noun, even though it ends in **-a**.

### Exercise: Answer

See table above. Determine whether the adjective (magnus, bonus..) agrees with the substantives (ager, puella, poeta) in both case (nominative, accusative...), gender (masculine, female and neuter) and number (singular and plural).

### Solution

1. **False.** *Magnus* doesn't agree with *agrōs*; in number and case.  
*Magnus*: Masculine, singular, nominative.  
*Agrōs*: Masculine, plural, accusative.
2. **True.** *Magna* agrees with *puella*.  
*Magna*: Feminine, singular, nominative.  
*Puella*: Feminine, singular, nominative.
3. **True.** *Bonus* agrees with *poeta*.  
*Bonus*: Masculine, singular, nominative.  
*Poeta*: Masculine, singular, nominative.
4. **True.** *Magnum* agrees with *servum*.  
*Magnum*: Neuter, singular, nominative.  
*Servum*: Neuter, singular, nominative.
5. **False.** *Magnae* doesn't agree with *poetae*; in gender.  
*Magnae*: Feminine, plural, nominative.  
*Poetae*: Masculine, plural, nominative.
6. **True.** *Bella* agrees with *magna*.  
*Bella*: Neuter, plural, nominative.  
*Magna*: Neuter, plural, nominative.

## 57.5 Grammar: The Use of the Accusative

| Lesson Vocabulary  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| Latin  | English             |
| curri-t  | he/she runs         |
| porta-t  | he/she carries      |
| specta-t   | he/she watches      |
| da-t   | he/she gives        |
| fuisse   | to have been        |
| fuī  | I have been         |
| fuiſtī   | you have been       |
| (puer) fuit  | (the boy) has been  |
| fuimus   | we have been        |
| fuiſtis  | you (pl.) have been |
| fuērunt  | they have been      |
| Nota Bene: 'fuisse' and all the forms of it, the past tense of 'esse', behaves exactly like the present tense. |                     |

The newly introduced verbs, ama-t, curri-t, and porta-t take the accusative as the 'object'. Unless specified, any verb you look up in the dictionary will take the accusative, not the nominative. This means that they are **transitive verbs**, verbs that happen to someone or something, e.g.:

I heal you. (*acc.*)  
 You make my day. (*acc.*)  
 She hit your arm. (*acc.*)

In the examples above, the **bold** words are the subject of the sentence clause. Because something happens "to" them, they can't be in nominative.

## 57.6 Grammatical Explanation Using English Sentences

### Grammatical Explanation 1

*English:* The boy hits the car.  
*Explanation:* NOMINATIVE VERB ACCUSATIVE

### Grammatical Explanation 2

*English:* The girl hugs the boy.  
*Explanation:* NOMINATIVE VERB ACCUSATIVE

### Grammatical Explanation 3

*English:* He who flees, deserves the guillotine.  
*Explanation:* NOMINATIVE VERB VERB ACCUSATIVE

## 57.6.1 Exercise 4: Find the Nominative and Accusative

**Exercise: Find the Nominative and Accusative (if present) in each the sentence.**

Find the Nominative and Accusative (if present) in each the sentence.

1. The boy is good.
2. The girl kisses the boy.
3. The boy gives the book.
4. The child watches the TV.
5. Whom it concerns.
6. To the kitchen I run
7. I eat the pizza.

**Solution**

1. The boy {nom} is good {nom}.  
*Puer {nom} est bonus {nom}.*
2. The girl {nom} kisses the boy {acc}.  
*Puella {nom} puerum {acc} basiat.*
3. The boy {nom} gives the book {acc}.  
*Puer {nom} librum {acc} dat.*
4. The child {nom} watches the TV {acc}.  
*Infans {nom} televisorium {acc} videt.*
5. Whom {acc} it {nom} concerns.  
*???*
6. To the kitchen {acc} I {nom} run.  
*Ad culinam {acc} [ego {nom}] curro.*
7. I {nom} eat the pizza {acc}.  
*Pittam {acc} [ego {nom}] edo.*

**Exercise: In the following sentences, identify the accusative and nominative. Then translate.**

In the following sentences, identify the accusative and nominative. Then translate.

1. Puer est bonus.
2. Puella puerum amat..
3. Puer cistam portat.
4. Filius virum spectat.
5. Ad culinam currit.

**Solution**

1. Puer {nom} est bonus {nom}.  
The boy {nom} is good {nom}.
2. Puella {nom} puerum {acc} amat.  
The girl {nom} loves the boy {acc}.
3. Puer {nom} cistam {acc} portat.  
The boy {nom} carries the box {acc}.

4. Filius {nom} virum {acc} spectat.  
The son {nom} watched the husband {acc}.
5. Ad culinam {acc} currit.  
To the kitchen {acc} [he {nom}] runs.

Category:Latin<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>2</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>

## 58 Exercises

### 58.1 Noun Tables

|            | 1 <sup>st</sup> declension |                 | 2 <sup>nd</sup> declension |                 | -um (neuter)    |               |
|------------|----------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|
|            | <b>-a</b>                  | <b>SINGULAR</b> | <b>-us/er</b>              | <b>SINGULAR</b> | <b>SINGULAR</b> | <b>PLURAL</b> |
| nominative | puell-a                    | puell-ae        | serv-us/puer               | serv-ī          | bell-um         | bell-a        |
| genitive   | puell-ae                   | puell-ārum      | serv-ī                     | serv-ī          | bell-ī          | bell-ōrum     |
| accusative | puell-am                   | puell-ās        | serv-um                    | serv-um         | bell-um         | bell-a        |
| dative     | puell-ae                   | puell-īs        | serv-ō                     | serv-īs         | bell-ō          | bell-īs       |

## 58.2 The Genitive

The genitive case is a descriptive case. The genitive case describes the following features of the described noun:

- Possession e.g. The Dog of Marcus *or* Marcus's Dog (Canis Marcī)
- Origin e.g. Marcus of Rome (Marcus Romae)
- Relation e.g. A thing of beauty (Rēs pulchrae)
- Quantity e.g. A gallon of water
- Quality e.g. Day of wrath (Diēs irae)

Quite simply, a word in the genitive case is translated with the preposition "of". Note that Latin does not have a separate form for the possessive genitive (*Marcus's Dog* vs *The Dog of Marcus*), as does English. A word in the genitive case showing possession can be translated either way.

### 58.2.1 Latin Examples



|       |       |            |      |            |          |     |      |       |            |      |         |         |            |      |                |          |    |      |      |            |      |
|-------|-------|------------|------|------------|----------|-----|------|-------|------------|------|---------|---------|------------|------|----------------|----------|----|------|------|------------|------|
| Latin | canis | nominative | noun | puerī mali | genitive | est | verb | bonus | nominative | adj. | English | The dog | nominative | noun | of the bad boy | genitive | is | verb | good | nominative | adj. |
|-------|-------|------------|------|------------|----------|-----|------|-------|------------|------|---------|---------|------------|------|----------------|----------|----|------|------|------------|------|

|                    |                      |      |                    |                 |                    |
|--------------------|----------------------|------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| Latin              |                      |      | English            |                 |                    |
| canis              | puerōrum<br>malōrum  | est  | The dog            | of the bad boys | good               |
| nominative<br>noun | genitive<br>(plural) | verb | nominative<br>noun | genitive        | nominative<br>adj. |
|                    |                      |      |                    | verb            |                    |

### 58.2.2 Exercise 1

Indicate the word in the genitive:

1. Flavia's dog is good.
2. The man has his mother's good taste.
3. Māter Flāvīae est domina.
4. The sword of justice is swift.

## 58.3 Agreeing with the Adjectives

When adjectives are used to describe nouns in the genitive case, they must have the same case, number, and gender as the noun to which it refers.

### 58.3.1 Example

**A road of beautiful Rome → Via Romae pulchrae.**

If we look at the bare necessities, namely nouns, in this phrase, then we get "road of Rome," which is translated as "via Romae." Now, let's look at the adjective: beautiful (*pulchra*). Its antecedent (the noun it modifies) is Rome. Since Rome is in the genitive case, *pulchra* also needs to be in the genitive case. Both are already feminine, so we don't need to change that.

To make *pulchra* in the genitive singular case, we replace the final "-a" with a "-ae," and we get *pulchrae*.

It's that simple.

## 58.4 The Dative

The dative case, also known as the indirect object case indicates:

- For whom, e.g., I made this car **for him**.
- To whom, e.g., I gave this car **to him**.

Latin does not distinguish between "to" or "for", though this is sometimes the case in English:

- I made this car **for him**. ↔ I made **him** this car.
- I gave this car **to him**. ↔ I gave **him** this car.

### 58.4.1 Example 1

|                 |      |            |              |            |
|-----------------|------|------------|--------------|------------|
| He              | made | the desk   | for          | his friend |
| nominative noun | verb | accusative | dative prep. | dative     |

'For' is the preposition indicating a dative. 'For' can be used in some other constructs. To determine whether it is dative, analyse the meaning of the sentence (see Example 3). Practice will enable you to quickly spot the case of a noun in the sentence without much effort.

### 58.4.2 Example 2

*He gave the book **to John**; He gave **to John** the book; or He gave **John** the book.*

This demonstrates how English can use prepositions to change word order and even 'presume' a certain preposition exists that has been left out, giving a dative construct.

### 58.4.3 Latin Examples

|       |                        |            |         |                       |            |
|-------|------------------------|------------|---------|-----------------------|------------|
| Latin | amīcō meō <sup>1</sup> | donum.     | English | my friend             | a gift.    |
| Donō  | dative noun/adj. pair  | accusative | I gave  | dative noun/adj. pair | accusative |
| verb  |                        |            | verb    |                       |            |

---

1 Note how the word "meus" become "meo" in order to agree with "amico".

|       |                   |            |            |                |
|-------|-------------------|------------|------------|----------------|
| Latin |                   |            |            |                |
| Feret | mihi <sup>2</sup> | stylum.    | English    |                |
| verb  | dative pronoun    | accusative | He brought | a pen.         |
|       |                   |            | verb       | accusative     |
|       |                   |            |            | dative pronoun |

2    Note that the pronouns have a dative case as well, which can be reviewed in the chapter on pronouns.

## 58.5 Exercise 2: Translate into English

| Latin                       | English                   |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| dō, dāre                    | to give                   |
| reddō, reddere              | to give back              |
| liber, librī (m.)           | book                      |
| amīcus, -ī (m.)             | friend                    |
| scribō, -ere                | to write                  |
| epistula, -ae (f.)          | letter, message           |
| Imperator, Imperatoris (m.) | Emperor                   |
| placeo, -ere (+dat.)        | to please, be pleasing to |

Note that *placeo* requires the dative case, as opposed to the accusative case. Verbs such as this are denoted with (+*dat.*) or similar abbreviations.

### Exercise: Questions

1. Do librum amico.
2. Amicus meum librum legit et mihi librum reddit.
3. Scribo epistulas Imperatori.
4. Meae epistulae Imperatori placent.

### Solution

1. I give the book to a friend
2. The friend read my book and returned the book to me.
3. I am writing letters to the Emperor.
4. My letters are pleasing to the Emperor.

## 58.6 Roman Numerals

The Romans did not use the Hindu-Arabic numerals we use today. They used their own symbols and own numeric system. We still use Roman Numerals today.

| Roman Numeral | Latin Number          | English Number    | Hindu-Arabic Numeral | Spanish Number | French Number | Italian Number   | Portuguese Number |
|---------------|-----------------------|-------------------|----------------------|----------------|---------------|------------------|-------------------|
| I             | ūnus -a<br>-um        | one               | 1                    | uno            | un            | uno              | um                |
| II            | duo -ae               | two               | 2                    | dos            | deux          | due              | dois              |
| III           | trēs, tria            | three             | 3                    | tres           | trois         | tre              | três              |
| IV            | quattor               | four              | 4                    | cuatro         | quatre        | quattro          | quatro            |
| V             | quinque               | five              | 5                    | cinco          | cinq          | cinque           | cinco             |
| VI            | sēx                   | six               | 6                    | seis           | six           | sei              | seis              |
| VII           | septem                | seven             | 7                    | siete          | sept          | sette            | sete              |
| VIII          | octō                  | eight             | 8                    | ocho           | huit          | otto             | oito              |
| IX            | novem                 | nine              | 9                    | nueve          | neuf          | nove             | nove              |
| X             | decem                 | ten               | 10                   | diez           | dix           | dieci            | dez               |
| XV            | quindecim             | fifteen           | 15                   | quinze         | quinze        | quindici         | quinze            |
| XX            | viginti               | twenty            | 20                   | veinte         | vingt         | venti            | vinte             |
| XXV           | viginti<br>quinque    | twenty-five       | 25                   | veinticinco    | vingt-cinq    | venticinque      | vinte e<br>cinco  |
| L             | quinquag-<br>inta     | fifty             | 50                   | cincuenta      | cinquante     | cinquanta        | cinquenta         |
| C             | centum                | one hun-<br>dred  | 100                  | cien           | cent          | cento            | cem               |
| D             | quingentī,<br>-ae, -a | five hun-<br>dred | 500                  | quinientos     | cinq cents    | cinque-<br>cento | quinhentos        |
| M             | mille                 | one thou-<br>sand | 1000                 | mil            | mille         | mille            | mil               |



Note the declensions of the first three numbers. *Nullus* is the Latin equivalent of zero, for example: *nullam puellam in agro video* means *I see no girl in the field*.

| Nominative | Accusative | Genitive | Dative | Ablative |
|------------|------------|----------|--------|----------|
| nullus     | nullum     | nullius  | nulli  | nullo    |
| nulla      | nullam     | nullius  | nulli  | nulla    |
| nullum     | nullum     | nullius  | nulli  | nullo    |
| unus       | unum       | unius    | uni    | uno      |
| una        | unam       | unius    | uni    | una      |
| unum       | unum       | unius    | uni    | uno      |
| duo        | duos       | duorum   | duobus | duobus   |
| duae       | duas       | duarum   | duabus | duabus   |
| duo        | duo        | duorum   | duobus | duobus   |
| tres       | tres       | trium    | tribus | tribus   |
| tres       | tres       | trium    | tribus | tribus   |
| tria       | tria       | trium    | tribus | tribus   |

### 58.6.1 Exercise 3

Write the word form of the numbers in the following sentences in the correct case.

1. **III** homines me salutant
2. magistro **II** libros reddo
3. **D** senatoribus multa (*many things*) dico
4. **III** horas diligenter laboro

Category:Latin<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>

# 59 Translation

## 59.1 The Ablative Case

The ablative case in Latin has 4 main uses:

1. With certain prepositions, eg. in, cum, sub
2. Instrumental ablative, expressing the equivalent of English "by", "with" or "using"
3. Locative Ablative, using the ablative by itself to mean "in", locating an action in space or time
4. Ablative of separation or origin, expressing the equivalent of English "from"

The different uses of the ablative will be dealt progressively. For a summary of all forms of the ablative, please consult the Appendix.

## 59.2 Grammar Part 5: The Power of the Ablative Case

Ablative generally indicates position in time and/or space (i.e. when and where). It can also indicate the idea of ways of getting to a location, abstractly or concretely.

### 59.2.1 Ablative of Means

#### Exercise

How would you translate "I made the toga by hand"?

- **Hint:** You would not (and should not) use the genitive. The case you are studying right now can be used by itself for this goal.
- **Hint:** Remember that you won't need to use the pronoun "I," since Latin is based not on word order, but on the endings!
- **Glossary:**
  - "to make" - *Facio* ("I make"), *facere* ("to make"), *feci* ("I made"), *factus* ("made")
  - "toga" - *Toga*, *togae* feminine
  - "hand" - *Manus*, *manus* feminine (This is fourth declension)

#### Answer

Answer: *Togam manu feci.*

In this case, the word "manu" is in the ablative (see fourth declension list) and thus means "by hand."

## Exercise

I have my wisdom by means of my teacher.

- 'Glossary:

"wisdom" - *Sapientia, sapientiae* feminine

"to have" - *Habeo* ("I have"), *habere* ("to have"), *habui* ("I had"), *habitus* ("had")

"teacher" - *Magister, magistri* masculine (This is a second declension word, despite the 'r' at the end, like *puer*.)

## Answer

Answer: *Habeo sapientiam magistro.*

### 59.2.2 Ablative of Time

How would you say: *I will arrive at the 5th hour.*

'at the 5th hour' is indicating position of time. Thus, it can be put into the ablative case, giving:

*adveniam quinta hora*

In general, therefore, in order to say "In the morning", "At nine O'clock," or "In the tenth year," use ablative. It is generally used to refer to a specific time in which something has, does, or will occur.

Example: I will leave in the night.

Hint: Future tense can be looked up in the appendices of this Wikibook!

Hint: to leave- *discedo, discedere*; night- *nox, noctis* (This is a third declension word!)

## Answer

Answer: *Discedam nocte.*

Note the simplicity in which Latin translates the six words into simply two. The ending based language completely negates the need for the words "I," "will," "in," and "the."

### 59.2.3 Ablative of Place

*Naves navigabant mari.* The ships were sailing on the sea.

The ablative is also useful for showing the location of things, in general where you would use the words on, in, or at. There is an exception for the slightly more archaic locative, which is used with the words *domi* (from *domus, domus, f.*, home), *ruri* (from *rus, ruris, n.*, country [as opposed to city]), and *Romae* (from *Roma, Romae, f.*, Rome), as well as with the names of towns, cities and small islands.

Latin has its own way of handling prepositions depending on the nouns and their cases in the sentence, including the versatile *in*, which can take many different meanings depending upon the case of the object.

### 59.3 Ablative with prepositions

Here are a few prepositions that can take the ablative (for a fuller list, see the lesson on adverbs and prepositions in the previous chapter):

| Latin                     | English                   |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>in</i> <sup>1</sup>    | in, on                    |
| <i>a/ab</i>               | from                      |
| <i>de</i>                 | down from, concerning     |
| <i>e/ex</i>               | out of, out from          |
| <i>cum</i>                | with                      |
| <i>sine</i>               | without                   |
| <i>pro</i>                | on behalf of, in front of |
| <i>super</i> <sup>2</sup> | upon, above, beyond       |
| <i>sub</i> <sup>3</sup>   | under, beneath            |

As a general rule, when motion is implied, use the accusative, but when location is implied

#### 59.3.1 Example 3

*Servus ex agris venit.*

"The slave came from the fields."

Note: *Ager* (*ager*, *agri*, *m.*, field) must take an ablative suffix to match the preceding preposition, in this case *e/ex*.

Incidentally, both *ager* and *campus* mean "field," but *ager*, like its English derivative "agriculture", connotes a farming field, while *campus* (think "camping" or "college campus") means "open field." The *Campus Martius* was a large field in Rome used for military training.

### 59.4 The Vocative Case

While you will rarely need to ask Lupus where the bathroom is in Latin, you may find yourself reading either quotes or letters in which a person is being directly addressed. The case it will be in is the vocative.

For example, "Hail, Augustus" will appear in Latin as *Ave Auguste*, and not *Ave Augustus*.

---

1 Means "into" or "against" when used with the accusative

2 Has static meaning when used with the ablative but connotes motion when used with the accusative

3 Usually means "up to" or "up to the foot of" when used with the accusative

Each declension has its own form of the vocative singular and plural. They are listed in the table below.

Furthermore, in all but the second declension, the nominative and vocative are exactly the same!

|          |         |                          |          |          |          |
|----------|---------|--------------------------|----------|----------|----------|
| Number   |         |                          |          |          |          |
| Singular | First   | Second*                  | Third    | Fourth   | Fifth    |
| Plural** | a<br>ae | us->e, ius->i, r->r<br>i | --<br>es | us<br>us | es<br>es |

- In the second declension singular, there are three separate possibilities for the vocative, depending on its nominative ending. Hence, if it is a *us* word, it will become an *e* and so forth.

### Examples for different declensions in the second declension

- **-us:**  
Lupus -> Lupe (given name, wolf)
- **-ius:**  
Filius -> Fili (son)  
Horatius -> Horati (given name)
- **-r:**  
Puer -> Puer (boy)

*In all cases, the plural vocative is exactly the same as the plural nominative. This extends to those words which are neuter, which always have an 'a' for the nominative and vocative.*

### Examples

1. Hello, Sextus. (Hello= *Salve*)\*  
Salve, Sexte.
  2. Speak, girl! (Speak= *dico, dicere, dixi*)\*  
Dic, puella.
  3. Knee, run! (Knee= *genu*; run= *curro, currere, cucurri*)\*  
Genu, curre!
  4. Oh, heart, why do you lead me? (Oh-o; heart- *cor*, *cordis*-f.; lead-duco, ducere;  
O, cor! Cur ducis tu me?
- Note that the first three also require use of the imperative. The imperative is used when ordering or telling someone what to do, e.g.- "Stop," or "Get away from me."

The basic form of the imperative is created by dropping the "re" off of the infinitive form of the verb, as in: Amare, which becomes Ama; at least in the singular active form, which is all that these exercises require. More can be found about this subject in the chapter on verbs.

## 60 Revision

### 60.1 Personal Pronouns in English

| Lesson Vocabulary |              |
|-------------------|--------------|
| Latin             | English      |
| cibus             | food         |
| laborat           | he/she works |

Pronouns are nouns which are used instead of another noun ('pro', in place of 'noun', noun.)

There are three categories of pronouns which are divided up into persons: 1st, 2nd, and 3rd. In addition, pronouns can be singular or plural. They are declined like all other nouns.

| Person | Singular  | Plural    |
|--------|-----------|-----------|
| 1st    | I         | We        |
| 2nd    | You, Thou | You (all) |
| 3rd    | He/She/It | They      |

### 60.2 Personal Pronouns in Latin

#### 60.2.1 1st/2nd Person Pronouns

**Table of Personal Pronouns in all of their cases: I, thou, we, ye**

Note: Thou is the archaic singular of the archaic plural ye - useful for distinguishing you (singular) from you (plural)



| Case       | Singular      |            |               | Plural                |                     |        |
|------------|---------------|------------|---------------|-----------------------|---------------------|--------|
|            | 1st Person    | 2nd Person |               | 1st Person            | 2nd Person          |        |
| Nominative | ego<br>I      | tū         | you           | nōs<br>we             | vōs<br>you          |        |
| Genitive   | meī<br>of me  | tuī        | of you        | nostrī(nostrum)<br>us | vestrī<br>(vestrum) | of you |
| Dative     | mihi<br>to me | tibi       | to/for<br>you | nōbīs<br>to us        | vōbīs<br>to/for you |        |
| Accusative | mē<br>me      | tē         | you           | nōs<br>us             | vōs<br>you          |        |
| Ablative   | mē<br>from me | tē         | from you      | nōbīs<br>from us      | vōbīs<br>from you   |        |

Nota Bene: the genitive is used in certain phrases like:

1. memor nostrī, mindful of us
2. paucī vestrum, a few of you.

For the possessive uses (my sister, your bicycle), Latin does not use the genitive, but the possessive adjectives:

| Latin                   | English              |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| meus, mea, meum         | my                   |
| tuus, tua, tuum         | thy                  |
| suus, sua, sum          | his/hers, its, their |
| noster, nostra, nostrum | our                  |
| vester, vestra, vestrum | your                 |
| Pater noster            | Our father           |

### 60.2.2 3rd Person Pronouns

Technically, 3rd person pronouns do not exist in Latin as they do in English. However, they do have equivalents.

Adjectives modify nouns and take the gender of the noun which they modify. However, adjectives do not necessarily need a substantive present in the sentence to modify. The substantive can be presumed. In this way, '3rd person' pronouns are formed.

#### Example 1

Take the masculine form of the adjective 'ille'. Literally it means 'That (masculine) thing.' However one could take it for simply meaning 'he', depending on the context. Similarly, the pronoun 'iste' means 'this (masc.) thing'. Iste and ille are declined in exactly the same way.

If no substantive is provided assume words like these: 'man', 'woman', 'thing', 'idea', 'concept', 'reason' etc. Let context be your guide.

### 60.2.3 Common Adjectives Used as 3rd Person Pronouns In Latin

#### Declension of Ille (that)

| Declension of <i>ille</i> (that): Singular |           |          |        |                    |           |        |
|--|-----------|----------|--------|--------------------|-----------|--------|
|  | Latin     |          |        | English            |           |        |
|  | Masculine | Feminine | Neuter | Masculine          | Feminine  | Neuter |
| <b>Nominative</b>                          | ille      | illa     | illud  | he                 | she       | it     |
| <b>Genitive</b>                            | illius    | illius   | illius | his                | her, hers | its    |
| <b>Dative</b>                              | illī      | illī     | illī   | to him             | to her    | to it  |
| <b>Accusative</b>                          | illum     | illam    | illud  | him                | her       | it     |
| <b>Ablative</b>                            | illō      | illā     | illō   | by, with, from him | her       | it     |

| Declension of <i>ille</i> (that): Plural |           |          |         |                            |  |
|--|-----------|----------|---------|----------------------------|--|
|  | Latin     |          |         | English                    |  |
|  | Masculine | Feminine | Neuter  |                            |  |
| Nominative                               | illī      | illae    | illa    | they, those                |  |
| Genitive                                 | illōrum   | illārum  | illōrum | their, theirs, of those    |  |
| Dative                                   | illīs     | illīs    | illīs   | to them, to those          |  |
| Accusative                               | illōs     | illās    | illa    | them, those                |  |
| Ablative                                 | illīs     | illis    | illīs   | by, with, from them, those |  |

Ille is often used as a kind of pronoun. In situations with multiple phrases or sentences, however, it is syntactically different from is, ea, id (see below).

For example: "Canis puero cibum dat. Is laborat in agro." means "The dog gives food to the boy. The dog works in the field".

However: "Canis puero cibum dat. Ille laborat in agro." means "The dog gives food to the boy. The boy works in the field".

Thus, ille, unlike the other pronouns makes a previous object into the subject (and vice versa).

#### **Examples of the Usage of Ille:**

| Latin                   | English   |
|-------------------------|---|
| Ille est dominus.       | He is the master. (ille as pronoun)                 |
| Ille dominus est malus. | That master is bad. (ille as adjective)             |
| Illam videt             | He sees her. (or 'she sees her' - illam as pronoun) |
| Illam puellam videt     | He (or she) sees that girl (illam as adjective).    |

#### **Declension of Is, ea, id: (personal pronouns w/ translations)**

| Singular   |       |  |  |         |             |  |             |  |            |
|------------|-------|--|--|---------|-------------|--|-------------|--|------------|
| Case       | Latin |  |  | English |             |  |             |  |            |
|            | M     |  |  | N       |             |  | F           |  | N          |
| Nominative | is    |  |  | id      | he          |  | she         |  | it         |
| Genitive   | eius  |  |  |         | his         |  | her, hers   |  | its        |
| Dative     | eī    |  |  |         | to him      |  | to her      |  | to it      |
| Accusative | eum   |  |  |         | him         |  | her         |  | it         |
| Ablative   | eō    |  |  |         | by/with him |  | by/with her |  | by/with it |

| Plural     |          |       |         |                            |   |   |
|------------|----------|-------|---------|----------------------------|---|---|
| Case       | Latin    |       | English |                            |   |   |
|            | M        | F     | N       | M                          | F | N |
| Nominative | ei       | eae   | ea      | they, those                |   |   |
| Genitive   | eōrum    | eārum | eōrum   | their, theirs, of those    |   |   |
| Dative     | eīs, iīs |       |         | to them, to those          |   |   |
| Accusative | eōs      | eās   | ea      | them, those                |   |   |
| Ablative   | eīs, iīs |       |         | by, with, from them, those |   |   |

Like ille, is can be used as a form of a pronoun.

### Examples of the Usage of Is

| Latin                 | English  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Is est dominus.       | He is the master. ("is" as pronoun)                |
| Is dominus est malus. | That master is bad. ("is" as adjective)            |
| Eam videt.            | He sees her. (or 'she sees her', "eam" as pronoun) |
| Eam puellam videt.    | He (or she) sees that girl. ("eam" as adjective)   |

**Declension of the Relative pronoun qui, quae, quod:** (meaning who, which, he)



| Singular   |       |      |      |                            |   |          |
|------------|-------|------|------|----------------------------|---|----------|
|            | M     | F    | N    | M                          | F | N        |
| Nominative | quī   | quae | quod | who                        |   | which    |
| Genitive   | cuius |      |      | whose                      |   | of which |
| Dative     | cui   |      |      | to whom                    |   | to which |
| Accusative | quem  | quam | quod | whom                       |   | which    |
| Ablative   | quō   | quā  | quō  | by, with, from whom, which |   |          |

| Plural     |   |        |        |        |   |                      |   |          |  |  |  |
|------------|---|--------|--------|--------|---|----------------------|---|----------|--|--|--|
|            | M |        | F      | N      | M |                      | F | N        |  |  |  |
| Nominative |   | quī    | quae   | quae   |   | who                  |   | which    |  |  |  |
| Genitive   |   | quorum | quarum | quorum |   | whose                |   | of which |  |  |  |
| Dative     |   | quibus |        |        |   | to whom              |   | to which |  |  |  |
| Accusative |   | quōs   | quās   | quae   |   | whom                 |   | which    |  |  |  |
| Ablative   |   | quibus |        |        |   | by, with, from whom, |   | which    |  |  |  |

Notice that the same forms are used to ask a question, with the following exceptions:

|            | M    | F    | N    |                   |
|------------|------|------|------|-------------------|
| Nominative | quis |      | quid | who, which, what  |
| Accusative | quem | quam | quid | whom, which, what |

### Uses of the Relative Pronoun

The relative pronoun takes on the case depending on the function it serves in the relative clause. For example, in the sentence "He sees the man who has a slave," "who" is translated as nominative because it is the subject of the clause "who has a slave." The antecedent (noun to which the pronoun refers) is usually before the relative clause.

### Examples of the Usage of the Relative Pronoun

1. *Virum videt<sup>1</sup> (he/she sees) **qui** servum<sup>2</sup> (servant) habet<sup>3</sup> (he/she has).*  
He sees the man **who** has a slave
2. ***Ille** est vir<sup>4</sup> **cujus** servus est malus<sup>5</sup>.*  
**That's** the man whose slave is bad.
3. *Quis **eum**<sup>6</sup> videt?*  
Who sees **him**?

### Declension of hic, haec, hoc (meaning this)

| Singular   |           |        |        |      |
|------------|-----------|--------|--------|------|
|            | Masculine | Femine | Neuter | this |
| Nominative | hic       | haec   | hoc    |      |
| Genitive   | huius     |        |        |      |
| Dative     | huic      |        |        |      |
| Accusative | hunc      | hanc   | hoc    |      |
| Ablative   | hōc       | hāc    | hōc    |      |

| Plural     |           |        |        |       |
|------------|-----------|--------|--------|-------|
|            | Masculine | Femine | Neuter |       |
| Nominative | hī        | hae    | haec   | these |
| Genitive   | hōrum     | hārum  | hōrum  |       |
| Dative     | hīs       |        |        |       |

- 1 <http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/videre%23Latin>
- 2 <http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/servus%23Latin>
- 3 <http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/habere%23Latin>
- 4 <http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/vir%23Latin>
- 5 <http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/malus%23Latin>
- 6 <http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/is%23Latin>

| Plural     |           |        |        |  |
|------------|-----------|--------|--------|--|
|            | Masculine | Femine | Neuter |  |
| Accusative | hōs       | hās    | haec   |  |
| Ablative   | hīs       |        |        |  |

N.B. Hic as an adverb that means 'here'. N.B. Hic can also be used as a pronoun.

### Example of the Usage of Hic

| Latin                            | English                           |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Hic servus, non ille, est malus. | This slave, not that one, is bad. |

## 60.3 Exercises

Give a suitable LATIN translation for the following:

1. To him
2. To her
3. For her
4. For him
5. To it
6. I
7. You
8. Ye
9. of You
10. of him
11. We
12. Thou
13. of thee
14. in him
15. in her

Give a suitable ENGLISH translation for the following:

1. Meus
2. Meī
3. Ille
4. Illud
5. Huic
6. Hī
7. Hoc
8. Nōs
9. Nostrī
10. Vōs
11. Vestrum

Category:Latin<sup>7</sup>

<sup>7</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>



## 61 Poem about Latin

Latin is a language,  
At least it used to be;  
It killed the Ancient Romans,  
And now it's killing me.  
(Iambic Trimeter)  
It killed Julius Caesar  
And killed those who learned it.  
Bless the dead!  
They surely earned it.  
(Anapestic Dimeter)  
Category:Latin<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin>



## 62 Contributors

| Edits | User                              |
|-------|-----------------------------------|
| 2     | AdRiley <sup>1</sup>              |
| 9     | Adrignola <sup>2</sup>            |
| 2     | Alexius08 <sup>3</sup>            |
| 1     | AllenZh <sup>4</sup>              |
| 2     | Alsocal <sup>5</sup>              |
| 14    | AmieKim <sup>6</sup>              |
| 2     | AndrewNJ <sup>7</sup>             |
| 4     | Andy85719 <sup>8</sup>            |
| 1     | Arcos <sup>9</sup>                |
| 2     | Arthurvogel <sup>10</sup>         |
| 83    | Asv <sup>11</sup>                 |
| 1     | Avicennasis <sup>12</sup>         |
| 2     | Aya <sup>13</sup>                 |
| 1     | Belteshazzar <sup>14</sup>        |
| 2     | Benjaminong <sup>15</sup>         |
| 91    | BiT <sup>16</sup>                 |
| 2     | C.m.brandenburg <sup>17</sup>     |
| 8     | Cameron789787 <sup>18</sup>       |
| 7     | Chiyo no saru <sup>19</sup>       |
| 7     | Chrisbbehrens <sup>20</sup>       |
| 2     | Crusadeonilliteracy <sup>21</sup> |

---

|    |   |
|----|---|
| 1  | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:AdRiley">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:AdRiley</a>                         |
| 2  | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Adrignola">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Adrignola</a>                     |
| 3  | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Alexius08">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Alexius08</a>                     |
| 4  | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:AllenZh">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:AllenZh</a>                         |
| 5  | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Alsocal">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Alsocal</a>                         |
| 6  | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:AmieKim">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:AmieKim</a>                         |
| 7  | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:AndrewNJ">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:AndrewNJ</a>                       |
| 8  | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Andy85719">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Andy85719</a>                     |
| 9  | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Arcos">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Arcos</a>                             |
| 10 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Arthurvogel">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Arthurvogel</a>                 |
| 11 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Asv">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Asv</a>                                 |
| 12 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Avicennasis">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Avicennasis</a>                 |
| 13 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Aya">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Aya</a>                                 |
| 14 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Belteshazzar">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Belteshazzar</a>               |
| 15 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Benjaminong">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Benjaminong</a>                 |
| 16 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:BiT">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:BiT</a>                                 |
| 17 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:C.m.brandenburg">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:C.m.brandenburg</a>         |
| 18 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Cameron789787">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Cameron789787</a>             |
| 19 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Chiyo_no_saru">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Chiyo_no_saru</a>             |
| 20 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Chrisbbehrens">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Chrisbbehrens</a>             |
| 21 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Crusadeonilliteracy">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Crusadeonilliteracy</a> |



1 Cysiro<sup>22</sup>  
2 Danielcanaris<sup>23</sup>  
1 Davidparsons<sup>24</sup>  
7 Deanos<sup>25</sup>  
2 Devnull5475<sup>26</sup>  
1 Dirk Hünninger<sup>27</sup>  
2 DonDaMon<sup>28</sup>  
3 DopefishJustin<sup>29</sup>  
4 Drelin<sup>30</sup>  
2 Einrud<sup>31</sup>  
4 Etscrivner<sup>32</sup>  
3 Fang Aili<sup>33</sup>  
2 Fcp<sup>34</sup>  
1 Fishpi<sup>35</sup>  
2 Flonejek<sup>36</sup>  
1 Footpanda13<sup>37</sup>  
3 Froggyfred<sup>38</sup>  
2 Fufc xdkdk<sup>39</sup>  
7 Furrykef<sup>40</sup>  
1 Gabriel Lein<sup>41</sup>  
2 Gaius Calvus<sup>42</sup>  
28 Gandalf1491<sup>43</sup>  
1 Garrett<sup>44</sup>  
1 Geoking66<sup>45</sup>  
2 Gl1d3r<sup>46</sup>

---

22 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Cysiro>  
23 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Danielcanaris>  
24 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Davidparsons>  
25 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Deanos>  
26 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Devnull5475>  
27 [http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Dirk\\_H%C3%BCnniger](http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Dirk_H%C3%BCnniger)  
28 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:DonDaMon>  
29 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:DopefishJustin>  
30 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Drelin>  
31 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Einrud>  
32 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Etscrivner>  
33 [http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Fang\\_Aili](http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Fang_Aili)  
34 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Fcp>  
35 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Fishpi>  
36 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Flonejek>  
37 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Footpanda13>  
38 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Froggyfred>  
39 [http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Fufc\\_xdkdk](http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Fufc_xdkdk)  
40 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Furrykef>  
41 [http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Gabriel\\_Lein](http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Gabriel_Lein)  
42 [http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Gaius\\_Calvus](http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Gaius_Calvus)  
43 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Gandalf1491>  
44 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Garrett>  
45 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Geoking66>  
46 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Gl1d3r>

|     |                               |
|-----|-------------------------------|
| 4   | GordonWillis <sup>47</sup>    |
| 2   | Greenbreen <sup>48</sup>      |
| 19  | Guanabot <sup>49</sup>        |
| 2   | Gzur <sup>50</sup>            |
| 2   | H.m.twink <sup>51</sup>       |
| 2   | Hagindaz <sup>52</sup>        |
| 2   | Herbythyme <sup>53</sup>      |
| 2   | Herr Beethoven <sup>54</sup>  |
| 89  | Hieronymous85 <sup>55</sup>   |
| 2   | Iamunknown <sup>56</sup>      |
| 1   | Ianep <sup>57</sup>           |
| 1   | J36miles <sup>58</sup>        |
| 2   | Jameshfisher <sup>59</sup>    |
| 3   | JenVan <sup>60</sup>          |
| 13  | Jerryproffitt63 <sup>61</sup> |
| 2   | JesusAddict3791 <sup>62</sup> |
| 22  | Jfmantis <sup>63</sup>        |
| 117 | Jguk <sup>64</sup>            |
| 2   | JohnWheater <sup>65</sup>     |
| 14  | Jomegat <sup>66</sup>         |
| 3   | Jondel <sup>67</sup>          |
| 4   | Jonel <sup>68</sup>           |
| 37  | Karl Wick <sup>69</sup>       |
| 4   | Kongen <sup>70</sup>          |
| 24  | Kpjas <sup>71</sup>           |

|    |   |
|----|---|
| 47 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:GordonWillis">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:GordonWillis</a>       |
| 48 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Greenbreen">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Greenbreen</a>           |
| 49 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Guanabot">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Guanabot</a>               |
| 50 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Gzur">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Gzur</a>                       |
| 51 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:H.m.twink">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:H.m.twink</a>             |
| 52 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Hagindaz">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Hagindaz</a>               |
| 53 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Herbythyme">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Herbythyme</a>           |
| 54 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Herr_Beethoven">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Herr_Beethoven</a>   |
| 55 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Hieronymous85">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Hieronymous85</a>     |
| 56 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Iamunknown">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Iamunknown</a>           |
| 57 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Ianep">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Ianep</a>                     |
| 58 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:J36miles">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:J36miles</a>               |
| 59 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Jameshfisher">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Jameshfisher</a>       |
| 60 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:JenVan">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:JenVan</a>                   |
| 61 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Jerryproffitt63">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Jerryproffitt63</a> |
| 62 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:JesusAddict3791">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:JesusAddict3791</a> |
| 63 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Jfmantis">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Jfmantis</a>               |
| 64 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Jguk">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Jguk</a>                       |
| 65 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:JohnWheater">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:JohnWheater</a>         |
| 66 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Jomegat">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Jomegat</a>                 |
| 67 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Jondel">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Jondel</a>                   |
| 68 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Jonel">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Jonel</a>                     |
| 69 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Karl_Wick">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Karl_Wick</a>             |
| 70 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Kongen">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Kongen</a>                   |
| 71 | <a href="http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Kpjas">http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Kpjas</a>                     |

1 Ktr101<sup>72</sup>  
1 LDV<sup>73</sup>  
1 Laurascudder<sup>74</sup>  
5 Lyndona6<sup>75</sup>  
1 M.McCarty<sup>76</sup>  
1 Mark Lewis<sup>77</sup>  
6 MichaelFrey<sup>78</sup>  
2 Mlloyd57<sup>79</sup>  
17 Nsoyeblyha<sup>80</sup>  
1 Orthopteran<sup>81</sup>  
2 Peterjenkins<sup>82</sup>  
1 Pjrich<sup>83</sup>  
2 Ponpan<sup>84</sup>  
6 Profquad<sup>85</sup>  
5 QuiteUnusual<sup>86</sup>  
2 RMFan1<sup>87</sup>  
2 Ravichandar84<sup>88</sup>  
2 Rebbiejaye<sup>89</sup>  
15 Recent\_Runes<sup>90</sup>  
1 Refusingtogiveup<sup>91</sup>  
7 Relike868<sup>92</sup>  
2 Reyk<sup>93</sup>  
2 Reywas92<sup>94</sup>  
4 Robert.Baruch<sup>95</sup>  
2 Sabbut<sup>96</sup>

---

72 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Ktr101>  
73 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:LDV>  
74 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Laurascudder>  
75 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Lyndona6>  
76 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:M.McCarty>  
77 [http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Mark\\_Lewis](http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Mark_Lewis)  
78 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:MichaelFrey>  
79 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Mlloyd57>  
80 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Nsoyeblyha>  
81 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Orthopteran>  
82 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Peterjenkins>  
83 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Pjrich>  
84 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Ponpan>  
85 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Profquad>  
86 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:QuiteUnusual>  
87 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:RMFan1>  
88 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Ravichandar84>  
89 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Rebbiejaye>  
90 [http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Recent\\_Runes](http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Recent_Runes)  
91 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Refusingtogiveup>  
92 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Relike868>  
93 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Reyk>  
94 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Reywas92>  
95 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Robert.Baruch>  
96 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Sabbut>

- 2 Samuel.sigaud<sup>97</sup>
- 1 Sbauman487<sup>98</sup>
- 2 Sean Antrim<sup>99</sup>
- 2 Sharkey<sup>100</sup>
- 2 Shax<sup>101</sup>
- 3 SimRPGman<sup>102</sup>
- 1 Sluffs<sup>103</sup>
- 4 Sma<sup>104</sup>
- 2 Smkatz<sup>105</sup>
- 2 Snipsnap<sup>106</sup>
- 1 Soap<sup>107</sup>
- 3 Spiked<sup>108</sup>
- 4 Storeye<sup>109</sup>
- 17 Swfarnsworth<sup>110</sup>
- 3 Talkingdrumm<sup>111</sup>
- 1 Thenub314<sup>112</sup>
- 1 Think Fast<sup>113</sup>
- 2 Thomasina123<sup>114</sup>
- 2 Timeroot<sup>115</sup>
- 1 Tmdhyun08<sup>116</sup>
- 1 UNIT A4B1<sup>117</sup>
- 2 Ugen64<sup>118</sup>
- 12 Uly<sup>119</sup>
- 49 Undotwa<sup>120</sup>
- 1 Van der Hoorn<sup>121</sup>

---

97 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Samuel.sigaud>  
 98 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Sbauman487>  
 99 [http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Sean\\_Antrim](http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Sean_Antrim)  
 100 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Sharkey>  
 101 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Shax>  
 102 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:SimRPGman>  
 103 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Sluffs>  
 104 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Sma>  
 105 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Smkatz>  
 106 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Snipsnap>  
 107 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Soap>  
 108 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Spiked>  
 109 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Storeye>  
 110 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Swfarnsworth>  
 111 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Talkingdrumm>  
 112 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Thenub314>  
 113 [http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Think\\_Fast](http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Think_Fast)  
 114 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Thomasina123>  
 115 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Timeroot>  
 116 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Tmdhyun08>  
 117 [http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:UNIT\\_A4B1](http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:UNIT_A4B1)  
 118 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Ugen64>  
 119 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Uly>  
 120 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Undotwa>  
 121 [http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Van\\_der\\_Hoorn](http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Van_der_Hoorn)

|     |                           |
|-----|---------------------------|
| 7   | Vbuterin <sup>122</sup>   |
| 122 | Vubb <sup>123</sup>       |
| 1   | Webaware <sup>124</sup>   |
| 1   | Wmcscrooge <sup>125</sup> |
| 1   | Wyverald <sup>126</sup>   |
| 3   | XN73Q <sup>127</sup>      |
| 7   | Xania <sup>128</sup>      |
| 1   | YMS <sup>129</sup>        |
| 1   | Yann <sup>130</sup>       |
| 4   | Zoid <sup>131</sup>       |

---

122 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Vbuterin>  
123 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Vubb>  
124 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Webaware>  
125 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Wmcscrooge>  
126 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Wyverald>  
127 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:XN73Q>  
128 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Xania>  
129 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:YMS>  
130 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Yann>  
131 <http://en.wikibooks.org/w/index.php?title=User:Zoid>

# List of Figures

- GFDL: Gnu Free Documentation License. <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/fdl.html>
- cc-by-sa-3.0: Creative Commons Attribution ShareAlike 3.0 License. <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/>
- cc-by-sa-2.5: Creative Commons Attribution ShareAlike 2.5 License. <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5/>
- cc-by-sa-2.0: Creative Commons Attribution ShareAlike 2.0 License. <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/>
- cc-by-sa-1.0: Creative Commons Attribution ShareAlike 1.0 License. <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/1.0/>
- cc-by-2.0: Creative Commons Attribution 2.0 License. <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/>
- cc-by-2.0: Creative Commons Attribution 2.0 License. <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/deed.en>
- cc-by-2.5: Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 License. <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.5/deed.en>
- cc-by-3.0: Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 License. <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/deed.en>
- GPL: GNU General Public License. <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gpl-2.0.txt>
- LGPL: GNU Lesser General Public License. <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/lgpl.html>
- PD: This image is in the public domain.
- ATTR: The copyright holder of this file allows anyone to use it for any purpose, provided that the copyright holder is properly attributed. Redistribution, derivative work, commercial use, and all other use is permitted.
- EURO: This is the common (reverse) face of a euro coin. The copyright on the design of the common face of the euro coins belongs to the European Commission. Authorised reproduction in a format without relief (drawings, paintings, films) provided they are not detrimental to the image of the euro.
- LFK: Lizenz Freie Kunst. <http://artlibre.org/licence/lal/de>
- CFR: Copyright free use.

- EPL: Eclipse Public License. <http://www.eclipse.org/org/documents/epl-v10.php>

Copies of the GPL, the LGPL as well as a GFDL are included in chapter Licenses<sup>132</sup>. Please note that images in the public domain do not require attribution. You may click on the image numbers in the following table to open the webpage of the images in your webbrowser.

---

<sup>132</sup> Chapter 63 on page 291







# 63 Licenses

## 63.1 GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

Version 3, 29 June 2007

Copyright © 2007 Free Software Foundation, Inc.  
<<http://fsf.org/>>

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed. Preamble

The GNU General Public License is a free, copyleft license for software and other kinds of works.

The licenses for most software and other practical works are designed to take away your freedom to share and change the works. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change all versions of a program—to make sure it remains free software for all its users. We, the Free Software Foundation, use the GNU General Public License for most of our software; it applies also to any other work released this way by its authors. You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for them if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs, and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to prevent others from denying you these rights or asking you to surrender the rights. Therefore, you have certain responsibilities if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it: responsibilities to respect the freedom of others.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must pass on to the recipients the same freedoms that you received. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

Developers that use the GNU GPL protect your rights with two steps: (1) assert copyright on the software, and (2) offer you this License giving you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify it.

For the developers' and authors' protection, the GPL clearly explains that there is no warranty for this free software. For both users' and authors' sake, the GPL requires that modified versions be marked as changed, so that their problems will not be attributed erroneously to authors of previous versions.

Some devices are designed to deny users access to install or run modified versions of the software inside them, although the manufacturer can do so. This is fundamentally incompatible with the aim of protecting users' freedom to change the software. The systematic pattern of such abuse occurs in the area of products for individuals to use, which is precisely where it is most unacceptable. Therefore, we have designed this version of the GPL to prohibit the practice for those products. If such problems arise substantially in other domains, we stand ready to extend this provision to those domains in future versions of the GPL, as needed to protect the freedom of users.

Finally, every program is threatened constantly by software patents. States should not allow patents to restrict development and use of software on general-purpose computers, but in those that do, we wish to avoid the special danger that patents applied to a free program could make it effectively proprietary. To prevent this, the GPL assures that patents cannot be used to render the program non-free.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. TERMS AND CONDITIONS 0. Definitions.

"This License" refers to version 3 of the GNU General Public License.

"Copyright" also means copyright-like laws that apply to other kinds of works, such as semiconductor masks.

"The Program" refers to any copyrightable work licensed under this License. Each licensee is addressed as "you". "Licensees" and "recipients" may be individuals or organizations.

To "modify" a work means to copy from or adapt all or part of the work in a fashion requiring copyright permission, other than the making of an exact copy. The resulting work is called a "modified version" of the earlier work or a work "based on" the earlier work.

A "covered work" means either the unmodified Program or a work based on the Program.

To "propagate" a work means to do anything with it that, without permission, would make you directly or secondarily liable for infringement under applicable copyright law, except executing it on a computer or modifying a private copy. Propagation includes copying, distribution (with or without modification), making available to the public, and in some countries other activities as well.

To "convey" a work means any kind of propagation that enables other parties to make or receive copies. Mere interaction with a user through a computer

network, with no transfer of a copy, is not conveying.

An interactive user interface displays "Appropriate Legal Notices" to the extent that it includes a convenient and prominently visible feature that (1) displays an appropriate copyright notice, and (2) tells the user that there is no warranty for the work (except to the extent that warranties are provided); that licensees may convey the work under this License, and how to view a copy of this License. If the interface presents a list of user commands or options, such as a menu, a prominent item in the list meets this criterion. 1. Source Code.

The "source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. "Object code" means any non-source form of a work.

A "Standard Interface" means an interface that either is an official standard defined by a recognized standards body, or, in the case of interfaces specified for a particular programming language, one that is widely used among developers working in that language.

The "System Libraries" of an executable work include anything, other than the work as a whole, that (a) is included in the normal form of packaging a Major Component, but which is not part of that Major Component, and (b) serves only to enable use of the work with that Major Component, or to implement a Standard Interface for which an implementation is available to the public in source code form. A "Major Component", in this context, means a major essential component (kernel, window system, and so on) of the specific operating system (if any) on which the executable work runs, or a compiler used to produce the work, or an object code interpreter used to run it.

The "Corresponding Source" for a work in object code form means all the source code needed to generate, install, and (for an executable work) run the object code and to modify the work, including scripts to control those activities. However, it does not include the work's System Libraries, or general-purpose tools or generally available free programs which are used unmodified in performing those activities but which are not part of the work. For example, Corresponding Source includes interface definition files associated with source files for the work, and the source code for shared libraries and dynamically linked subprograms that the work is specifically designed to require, such as by intimate data communication or control flow between those subprograms and other parts of the work.

The Corresponding Source need not include anything that users can regenerate automatically from other parts of the Corresponding Source.

The Corresponding Source for a work in source code form is that same work. 2. Basic Permissions.

All rights granted under this License are granted for the term of copyright on the Program, and are irrevocable provided the stated conditions are met. This License explicitly affirms your unlimited permission to run the unmodified Program. The output from running a covered work is covered by this License only if the output, given its content, constitutes a covered work. This License acknowledges your rights of fair use or other equivalent, as provided by copyright law.

You may make, run and propagate covered works that you do not convey, without conditions so long as your license otherwise remains in force. You may convey covered works to others for the sole purpose of having them make modifications exclusively for you, or provide you with facilities for running those works, provided that you comply with the terms of this License in conveying all material for which you do not control copyright. Those thus making or running the covered works for you must do so exclusively on your behalf, under your direction and control, on terms that prohibit them from making any copies of your copyrighted material outside their relationship with you.

Conveying under any other circumstances is permitted solely under the conditions stated below. Sublicensing is not allowed; section 10 makes it unnecessary. 3. Protecting Users' Legal Rights From Anti-Circumvention Law.

No covered work shall be deemed part of an effective technological measure under any applicable law fulfilling obligations under article 11 of the WIPO copyright treaty adopted on 20 December 1996, or similar laws prohibiting or restricting circumvention of such measures.

When you convey a covered work, you waive any legal power to forbid circumvention of technological measures to the extent such circumvention is effected by exercising rights under this License with respect to the covered work, and you disclaim any intention to limit operation or modification of the work as a means of enforcing, against the work's users, your or third parties' legal rights to forbid circumvention of technological measures. 4. Conveying Verbatim Copies.

You may convey verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice; keep intact all notices stating that this License and any non-permissive terms added in accord with section 7 apply to the code; keep intact all notices of the absence of any warranty; and give all recipients a copy of this License along with the Program.

You may charge any price or no price for each copy that you convey, and you may offer support or warranty protection for a fee. 5. Conveying Modified Source Versions.

You may convey a work based on the Program, or the modifications to produce it from the Program, in the form of source code under the terms of section 4, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

\* a) The work must carry prominent notices stating that you modified it, and giving a relevant date. \* b) The work must carry prominent notices stating that it is released under this License and any conditions added under section 7. This requirement modifies the requirement in section 4 to "keep intact all notices". \* c) You must license the entire work, as a whole, under this License to anyone who comes into possession of a copy. This License will therefore apply, along with any applicable section 7 additional terms, to the whole of the work, and all its parts, regardless of how they are packaged. This License gives no permission to license the work in any other way, but it does not invalidate such permission if you have separately received it. \* d) If the work has interactive user interfaces, each must display Appropriate Legal Notices; however, if the Program has interactive interfaces that do not display Appropriate Legal Notices, your work need not make them do so.

A compilation of a covered work with other separate and independent works, which are not by their nature extensions of the covered work, and which are not combined with it such as to form a larger program, in or on a volume of a storage or distribution medium, is called an "aggregate" if the compilation and its resulting copyright are not used to limit the access or legal rights of the compilation's users beyond what the individual works permit. Inclusion of a covered work in an aggregate does not cause this License to apply to the other parts of the aggregate. 6. Conveying Non-Source Forms.

You may convey a covered work in object code form under the terms of sections 4 and 5, provided that you also convey the machine-readable Corresponding Source under the terms of this License, in one of these ways:

\* a) Convey the object code in, or embodied in, a physical product (including a physical distribution medium), accompanied by the Corresponding Source fixed on a durable physical medium customarily used for software interchange. \* b) Convey the object code in, or embodied in, a physical product (including a physical distribution medium), accompanied by a written offer, valid for at least three years and valid for as long as you offer spare parts or customer support for that product model, to give anyone who possesses the object code either (1) a copy of the Corresponding Source for all the software in the product that is covered by this License, on a durable physical medium customarily used for software interchange, for a price no more than your reasonable cost of physically performing this conveying of source, or (2) access to copy the Corresponding Source from a network server at no charge. \* c) Convey individual copies of the object code with a copy of the written offer to provide the Corresponding Source. This alternative is allowed only occasionally and noncommercially, and only if you received the object code with such an offer, in accord with subsection 6b. \* d) Convey the object code by offering access from a designated place (gratis or for a charge), and offer equivalent access to the Corresponding Source in the same way through the same place at no further charge. You need not require recipients to copy the Corresponding Source along with the object code. If the place to copy the object code is a network server, the Corresponding Source may be on a different server (operated by you or a third party) that supports equivalent copying facilities, provided you maintain clear directions next to the object code saying where to find the Corresponding Source. Regardless of what server hosts the Corresponding Source, you remain obligated to ensure that it is available for as long as needed to satisfy these requirements. \* e) Convey the object code using peer-to-peer transmission, provided you inform other peers where the object code and Corresponding Source of the work are being offered to the general public at no charge under subsection 6d.

A separable portion of the object code, whose source code is excluded from the Corresponding Source as a System Library, need not be included in conveying the object code work.

A "User Product" is either (1) a "consumer product", which means any tangible personal property which is normally used for personal, family, or household purposes, or (2) anything designed or sold for incorporation into a dwelling. In determining whether a product is a consumer product, doubtful cases shall be resolved in favor of coverage. For a particular product received by a particular user, "normally used" refers to a typical or common use of that class of product, regardless of the status of the particular user or of the way in which the particular user actually uses, or expects or is expected to use, the product. A product is a consumer product regardless of whether the producer has substantial commercial, industrial, or non-consumer uses, unless such uses represent the only significant mode of use of the product.

"Installation Information" for a User Product means any methods, procedures, authorization keys, or other information required to install and execute modified versions of a covered work in that User Product from a modified version of its Corresponding Source. The information must suffice to ensure that the continued functioning of the modified object code is in no case prevented or interfered with solely because modification has been made.

If you convey an object code work under this section in, or with, or specifically for use in, a User Product, and the conveying occurs as part of a transaction in which the right of possession and use of the User Product is transferred to the recipient in perpetuity or for a fixed term (regardless of how the transaction is characterized), the Corresponding Source conveyed under this section must be accompanied by the Installation Information. But this requirement does not apply if neither you nor any third party retains the ability to install modified object code on the User Product (for example, the work has been installed in ROM).

The requirement to provide Installation Information does not include a requirement to continue to provide support service, warranty, or updates for a work that has been modified or installed by the recipient, or for the User Product in which it has been modified or installed. Access to a network may be denied when the modification itself materially and adversely affects the operation of the network or violates the rules and protocols for communication across the network.

Corresponding Source conveyed, and Installation Information provided, in accord with this section must be in a format that is publicly documented (and with an implementation available to the public in source code form), and must require no special password or key for unpacking, reading or copying. 7. Additional Terms.

"Additional permissions" are terms that supplement the terms of this License by making exceptions from one or more of its conditions. Additional permissions that are applicable to the entire Program shall be treated as though they were included in this License, to the extent that they are valid under applicable law. If additional permissions apply only to part of the Program, that part may be used separately under those permissions, but the entire Program remains governed by this License without regard to the additional permissions.

When you convey a copy of a covered work, you may at your option remove any additional permissions from that copy, or from any part of it. (Additional permissions may be written to require their own removal in certain cases when you modify the work.) You may place additional permissions on material, added by you to a covered work, for which you have or can give appropriate copyright permission.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this License, for material you add to a covered work, you may (if authorized by the copyright holders of that material) supplement the terms of this License with terms:

\* a) Disclaiming warranty or limiting liability differently from the terms of sections 15 and 16 of this License; or \* b) Requiring preservation of specified reasonable legal notices or author attributions in that material or in the Appropriate Legal Notices displayed by works containing it; or \* c) Prohibiting misrepresentation of the origin of that material, or requiring that modified versions of such material be marked in reasonable ways as different from the original version; or \* d) Limiting the use for publicity purposes of names of licensors or authors of the material; or \* e) Declining to grant rights under trademark law for use of some trade names, trademarks, or service marks; or \* f) Requiring indemnification of licensors and authors of that material by anyone who conveys the material (or modified versions of it) with contractual assumptions of liability to the recipient, for any liability that these contractual assumptions directly impose on those licensors and authors.

All other non-permissive additional terms are considered "further restrictions" within the meaning of section 10. If the Program as you received it, or any part of it, contains a notice stating that it is governed by this License along with a term that is a further restriction, you may remove that term. If a license document contains a further restriction but permits relicensing or conveying under this License, you may add to a covered work material governed by the terms of that license document, provided that the further restriction does not survive such relicensing or conveying.

If you add terms to a covered work in accord with this section, you must place, in the relevant source files, a statement of the additional terms that apply to those files, or a notice indicating where to find the applicable terms.

Additional terms, permissive or non-permissive, may be stated in the form of a separately written license, or stated as exceptions; the above requirements apply either way. 8. Termination.

You may not propagate or modify a covered work except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to propagate or modify it is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License (including any patent licenses granted under the third paragraph of section 11).

However, if you cease all violation of this License, then your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated (a) provisionally, unless and until the copyright holder explicitly and finally terminates your license, and (b) permanently, if the copyright holder fails to notify you of the violation by some reasonable means prior to 60 days after the cessation.

Moreover, your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated permanently if the copyright holder notifies you of the violation by some reasonable means, this is the first time you have received notice of violation of this License (for any work)

from that copyright holder, and you cure the violation prior to 30 days after your receipt of the notice.

Termination of your rights under this section does not terminate the licenses of parties who have received copies or rights from you under this License. If your rights have been terminated and not permanently reinstated, you do not qualify to receive new licenses for the same material under section 10. 9. Acceptance Not Required for Having Copies.

You are not required to accept this License in order to receive or run a copy of the Program. Ancillary propagation of a covered work occurring solely as a consequence of receiving copies or rights to receive a copy likewise does not require acceptance. However, nothing other than this License grants you permission to propagate or modify any covered work. These actions infringe copyright if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or propagating a covered work, you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so. 10. Automatic Licensing of Downstream Recipients.

Each time you convey a covered work, the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensors, to run, modify and propagate that work, subject to this License. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License.

An “entity transaction” is a transaction transferring control of an organization, or substantially all assets of one, or subdividing an organization, or merging organizations. If propagation of a covered work results from an entity transaction, each party to that transaction who receives a copy of the work also receives whatever licenses to the work the party’s predecessor in interest had or could give under the previous paragraph, plus a right to possession of the Corresponding Source of the work from the predecessor in interest, if the predecessor has it or can get it with reasonable efforts.

You may not impose any further restrictions on the exercise of the rights granted or affirmed under this License. For example, you may not impose a license fee, royalty, or other charge for exercise of rights granted under this License, and you may not initiate litigation (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that any patent claim is infringed by making, using, selling, offering for sale, or importing the Program or any portion of it. 11. Patents.

A “contributor” is a copyright holder who authorizes use under this License of the Program or a work on which the Program is based. The work thus licensed is called the contributor’s “contributor version”.

A contributor’s “essential patent claims” are all patent claims owned or controlled by the contributor, whether already acquired or hereafter acquired, that would be infringed by some manner, permitted by this License, of making, using, or selling its contributor version, but do not include claims that would be infringed only as a consequence of further modification of the contributor version. For purposes of this definition, “control” includes the right to grant patent sublicenses in a manner consistent with the requirements of this License.

Each contributor grants you a non-exclusive, worldwide, royalty-free patent license under the contributor’s essential patent claims, to make, use, sell, offer for sale, import and otherwise run, modify and propagate the contents of its contributor version.

## 63.2 GNU Free Documentation License

Version 1.3, 3 November 2008

Copyright © 2000, 2001, 2002, 2007, 2008 Free Software Foundation, Inc. <<http://fsf.org/>>

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed. 0. PREAMBLE

The purpose of this License is to make a manual, textbook, or other functional and useful document “free” in the sense of freedom: to assure everyone the effective freedom to copy and redistribute it, with or without modifying it, either commercially or noncommercially. Secondly, this License preserves for the author and publisher a way to get credit for their work, while not being considered responsible for modifications made by others.

This License is a kind of “copyleft”, which means that derivative works of the document must themselves be free in the same sense. It implements the GNU General Public License, which is a copyleft license designed for free software.

We have designed this License in order to use it for manuals for free software, because free software needs free documentation: a free program should come with manuals providing the same freedom that the software does. But this License is not limited to software manuals; it can be used for any textual work, regardless of subject matter or whether it is published as a printed book. We recommend this License principally for works whose purpose is instruction or reference. 1. APPLICABILITY AND DEFINITIONS

This License applies to any manual or other work, in any medium, that contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it can be distributed under the terms of this License. Such a notice grants a world-wide, royalty-free license, unlimited in duration, to use that work under the conditions stated herein. The “Document”, below, refers to any such manual or work. Any member of the public is a licensee, and is addressed as “you”. You accept the license if you copy, modify or distribute the work in a way requiring permission under copyright law.

A “Modified Version” of the Document means any work containing the Document or a portion of it, either copied verbatim, or with modifications and/or translated into another language.

A “Secondary Section” is a named appendix or a front-matter section of the Document that deals exclusively with the relationship of the publishers or

In the following three paragraphs, a “patent license” is any express agreement or commitment, however denominated, not to enforce a patent (such as an express permission to practice a patent or covenant not to sue for patent infringement). To “grant” such a patent license to a party means to make such an agreement or commitment not to enforce a patent against the party.

If you convey a covered work, knowingly relying on a patent license, and the Corresponding Source of the work is not available for anyone to copy, free of charge and under the terms of this License, through a publicly available network server or other readily accessible means, then you must either (1) cause the Corresponding Source to be so available, or (2) arrange to deprive yourself of the benefit of the patent license for this particular work, or (3) arrange, in a manner consistent with the requirements of this License, to extend the patent license to downstream recipients. “Knowingly relying” means you have actual knowledge that, but for the patent license, your conveying the covered work in a country, or your recipient’s use of the covered work in a country, would infringe one or more identifiable patents in that country that you have reason to believe are valid.

If, pursuant to or in connection with a single transaction or arrangement, you convey, or propagate by procuring conveyance of, a covered work, and grant a patent license to some of the parties receiving the covered work authorizing them to use, propagate, modify or convey a specific copy of the covered work, then the patent license you grant is automatically extended to all recipients of the covered work and works based on it.

A patent license is “discriminatory” if it does not include within the scope of its coverage, prohibits the exercise of, or is conditioned on the exercise of, one or more of the rights that are specifically granted under this License. You may not convey a covered work if you are a party to an arrangement with a third party that is in the business of distributing software, under which you make payment to the third party based on the extent of your activity of conveying the work, and under which the third party grants, to any of the parties who may receive the covered work from you, a discriminatory patent license (a) in connection with copies of the covered work conveyed by you (or copies made from those copies), or (b) primarily for and in connection with specific products or compilations that contain the covered work, unless you entered into that arrangement, or that patent license was granted, prior to 28 March 2007.

Nothing in this License shall be construed as excluding or limiting any implied license or other defenses to infringement that may otherwise be available to you under applicable patent law. 12. No Surrender of Others’ Freedom.

If conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot convey a covered work so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not convey it at all. For example, if you agree to terms that obligate you to collect a royalty for further conveying from those to whom you convey the Program, the only way you could satisfy both those terms and this License would be to refrain entirely from conveying the Program. 13. Use with the GNU Affero General Public License.

authors of the Document to the Document’s overall subject (or to related matters) and contains nothing that could fall directly within that overall subject. (Thus, if the Document is in part a textbook of mathematics, a Secondary Section may not explain any mathematics.) The relationship could be a matter of historical connection with the subject or with related matters, or of legal, commercial, philosophical, ethical or political position regarding them.

The “Invariant Sections” are certain Secondary Sections whose titles are designated, as being those of Invariant Sections, in the notice that says that the Document is released under this License. If a section does not fit the above definition of Secondary then it is not allowed to be designated as Invariant. The Document may contain no Invariant Sections. If the Document does not identify any Invariant Sections then there are none.

The “Cover Texts” are certain short passages of text that are listed, as Front-Cover Texts or Back-Cover Texts, in the notice that says that the Document is released under this License. A Front-Cover Text may be at most 5 words, and a Back-Cover Text may be at most 25 words.

A “Transparent” copy of the Document means a machine-readable copy, represented in a format whose specification is available to the general public, that is suitable for revising the document straightforwardly with generic text editors or (for images composed of pixels) generic paint programs or (for drawings created with vector drawing editors) and that is suitable for input to text formatters or for automatic translation to a variety of formats suitable for input to text formatters. A copy made in an otherwise Transparent file format whose markup, or absence of markup, has been arranged to thwart or discourage subsequent modification by readers is not Transparent. An image format is not Transparent if used for any substantial amount of text. A copy that is not “Transparent” is called “Opaque”.

Examples of suitable formats for Transparent copies include plain ASCII without markup, Texinfo input format, LaTeX input format, SGML or XML using a publicly available DTD, and standard-conforming simple HTML, PostScript or PDF designed for human modification. Examples of transparent image formats include PNG, XCF and JPG. Opaque formats include proprietary formats that can be read and edited only by proprietary word processors, SGML or XML for which the DTD and/or processing tools are not generally available, and the machine-generated HTML, PostScript or

Notwithstanding any other provision of this License, you have permission to link or combine any covered work with a work licensed under version 3 of the GNU Affero General Public License into a single combined work, and to convey the resulting work. The terms of this License will continue to apply to the part which is the covered work, but the special requirements of the GNU Affero General Public License, section 13, concerning interaction through a network will apply to the combination as such. 14. Revised Versions of this License.

The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the GNU General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies that a certain numbered version of the GNU General Public License “or any later version” applies to it, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that numbered version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of the GNU General Public License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

If the Program specifies that a proxy can decide which future versions of the GNU General Public License can be used, that proxy’s public statement of acceptance of a version permanently authorizes you to choose that version for the Program.

Later license versions may give you additional or different permissions. However, no additional obligations are imposed on any author or copyright holder as a result of your choosing to follow a later version. 15. Disclaimer of Warranty.

THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM “AS IS” WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. 16. Limitation of Liability.

IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MODIFIES AND/OR CONVEYS THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. 17. Interpretation of Sections 15 and 16.

If the disclaimer of warranty and limitation of liability provided above cannot be given local legal ef-

fect according to their terms, reviewing courts shall apply local law that most closely approximates an absolute waiver of all civil liability in connection with the Program, unless a warranty or assumption of liability accompanies a copy of the Program in return for a fee.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms.

To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively state the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the “copyright” line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

<one line to give the program’s name and a brief idea of what it does.> Copyright (C) <year>  
<name of author>

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program. If not, see <<http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>>.

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

If the program does terminal interaction, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode:

<program> Copyright (C) <year> <name of author>  
<This program comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type ‘show w’. This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it under certain conditions; type ‘show c’ for details.

The hypothetical commands ‘show w’ and ‘show c’ should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, your program’s commands might be different; for a GUI interface, you would use an “about box”.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or school, if any, to sign a “copyright disclaimer” for the program, if necessary. For more information on this, and how to apply and follow the GNU GPL, see <<http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>>.

The GNU General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Lesser General Public License instead of this License. But first, please read <<http://www.gnu.org/philosophy/why-not-lgpl.html>>.

PDF produced by some word processors for output purposes only.

The “Title Page” means, for a printed book, the title page itself, plus such following pages as are needed to hold, legibly, the material this License requires to appear in the title page. For works in formats which do not have any title page as such, “Title Page” means the text near the most prominent appearance of the work’s title, preceding the beginning of the body of the text.

The “publisher” means any person or entity that distributes copies of the Document to the public.

A section “Entitled XYZ” means a named subunit of the Document whose title either is precisely XYZ or contains XYZ in parentheses following text that translates XYZ in another language. (Here XYZ stands for a specific section name mentioned below, such as “Acknowledgements”, “Dedications”, “Endorsements”, or “History”.) To “Preserve the Title” of such a section when you modify the Document means that it remains a section “Entitled XYZ” according to this definition.

The Document may include Warranty Disclaimers next to the notice which states that this License applies to the Document. These Warranty Disclaimers are considered to be included by reference in this License, but only as regards disclaiming warranties; any other implication that these Warranty Disclaimers may have is void and has no effect on the meaning of this License. 2. VERBATIM COPYING

You may copy and distribute the Document in any medium, either commercially or noncommercially, provided that this License, the copyright notices, and the license notice saying this License applies to the Document are reproduced in all copies, and that you add no other conditions whatsoever to those of this License. You may not use technical measures to obstruct or control the reading or further copying of the copies you make or distribute. However, you may accept compensation in exchange for copies. If you distribute a large enough number of copies you must also follow the conditions in section 3.

You may also lend copies, under the same conditions stated above, and you may publicly display copies. 3. COPYING IN QUANTITY

If you publish printed copies (or copies in media that commonly have printed covers) of the Document, numbering more than 100, and the Document’s license notice requires Cover Texts, you

\* A. Use in the Title Page (and on the covers, if any) a title distinct from that of the Document, and from those of previous versions (which should, if there were any, be listed in the History section of the Document). You may use the same title as a previous version if the original publisher of that version gives permission. \* B. List on the Title

Page, as authors, one or more persons or entities responsible for authorship of the modifications in the Modified Version, together with at least five of the principal authors of the Document (all of its principal authors, if it has fewer than five), unless they release you from this requirement. \* C. State on the Title page the name of the publisher of the Modified Version, as the publisher. \* D. Preserve all the copyright notices of the Document. \* E. Add an appropriate copyright notice for your modifications adjacent to the other copyright notices. \* F. Include, immediately after the copyright notices, a license notice giving the public permission to use the Modified Version under the terms of this License, in the form shown in the Addendum below. \* G. Preserve in that license notice the full lists of Invariant Sections and required Cover Texts given in the Document's license notice. \* H. Include an unaltered copy of this License. \* I. Preserve the section Entitled "History", Preserve its Title, and add to it an item stating at least the title, year, new authors, and publisher of the Modified Version as given on the Title Page. If there is no section Entitled "History" in the Document, create one stating the title, year, authors, and publisher of the Document as given on its Title Page, then add an item describing the Modified Version as stated in the previous sentence. \* J. Preserve the network location, if any, given in the Document for public access to a Transparent copy of the Document, and likewise the network locations given in the Document for previous versions it was based on. These may be placed in the "History" section. You may omit a network location for a work that was published at least four years before the Document itself, or if the original publisher of the version it refers to gives permission. \* K. For any section Entitled "Acknowledgements" or "Dedications", Preserve the Title of the section, and preserve in the section all the substance and tone of each of the contributor acknowledgements and/or dedications given therein. \* L. Preserve all the Invariant Sections of the Document, unaltered in their text and in their titles. Section numbers or the equivalent are not considered part of the section titles. \* M. Delete any section Entitled "Endorsements". Such a section may not be included in the Modified Version. \* N. Do not retile any existing section to be Entitled "Endorsements" or to conflict in title with any Invariant Section. \* O. Preserve any Warranty Disclaimers.

If the Modified Version includes new front-matter sections or appendices that qualify as Secondary Sections and contain no material copied from the Document, you may at your option designate some or all of these sections as invariant. To do this, add their titles to the list of Invariant Sections in the Modified Version's license notice. These titles must be distinct from any other section titles.

You may add a section Entitled "Endorsements", provided it contains nothing but endorsements of your Modified Version by various parties—for example, statements of peer review or that the text has been approved by an organization as the authoritative definition of a standard.

You may add a passage of up to five words as a Front-Cover Text, and a passage of up to 25 words as a Back-Cover Text, to the end of the list of Cover Texts in the Modified Version. Only one passage of Front-Cover Text and one of Back-Cover Text may be added by (or through arrangements made by) any one entity. If the Document already includes a cover text for the same cover, previously added by you or by arrangement made by the same entity you are acting on behalf of, you may not add an-

other; but you may replace the old one, on explicit permission from the previous publisher that added the old one.

The author(s) and publisher(s) of the Document do not by this License give permission to use their names for publicity for or to assert or imply endorsement of any Modified Version. 5. COMBINING DOCUMENTS

You may combine the Document with other documents released under this License, under the terms defined in section 4 above for modified versions, provided that you include in the combination all of the Invariant Sections of all of the original documents, unmodified, and list them all as Invariant Sections of your combined work in its license notice, and that you preserve all their Warranty Disclaimers.

The combined work need only contain one copy of this License, and multiple identical Invariant Sections may be replaced with a single copy. If there are multiple Invariant Sections with the same name but different contents, make the title of each such section unique by adding at the end of it, in parentheses, the name of the original author or publisher of that section if known, or else a unique number. Make the same adjustment to the section titles in the list of Invariant Sections in the license notice of the combined work.

In the combination, you must combine any sections Entitled "History" in the various original documents, forming one section Entitled "History"; likewise combine any sections Entitled "Acknowledgements", and any sections Entitled "Dedications". You must delete all sections Entitled "Endorsements". 6. COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS

You may make a collection consisting of the Document and other documents released under this License, and replace the individual copies of this License in the various documents with a single copy that is included in the collection, provided that you follow the rules of this License for verbatim copying of each of the documents in all other respects.

You may extract a single document from such a collection, and distribute it individually under this License, provided you insert a copy of this License into the extracted document, and follow this License in all other respects regarding verbatim copying of that document. 7. AGGREGATION WITH INDEPENDENT WORKS

A compilation of the Document or its derivatives with other separate and independent documents or works, in or on a volume of a storage or distribution medium, is called an "aggregate" if the copyright resulting from the compilation is not used to limit the legal rights of the compilation's users beyond what the individual works permit. When the Document is included in an aggregate, this License does not apply to the other works in the aggregate which are not themselves derivative works of the Document.

If the Cover Text requirement of section 3 is applicable to these copies of the Document, then if the Document is less than one half of the entire aggregate, the Document's Cover Texts may be placed on covers that bracket the Document within the aggregate, or the electronic equivalent of covers if the Document is in electronic form. Otherwise they must appear on printed covers that bracket the whole aggregate. 8. TRANSLATION

Translation is considered a kind of modification, so you may distribute translations of the Document under the terms of section 4. Replacing Invariant Sections with translations requires special permission from their copyright holders, but you may include translations of some or all Invariant Sections in addition to the original versions of these Invariant Sections. You may include a translation of this License, and all the license notices in the Document, and any Warranty Disclaimers, provided that you also include the original English version of this License and the original versions of those notices and disclaimers. In case of a disagreement between the translation and the original version of this License or a notice or disclaimer, the original version will prevail.

If a section in the Document is Entitled "Acknowledgements", "Dedications", or "History", the requirement (section 4) to Preserve its Title (section 1) will typically require changing the actual title. 9. TERMINATION

You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Document except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute it is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License.

However, if you cease all violation of this License, then your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated (a) provisionally, unless and until the copyright holder explicitly and finally terminates your license, and (b) permanently, if the copyright holder fails to notify you of the violation by some reasonable means prior to 60 days after the cessation.

Moreover, your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated permanently if the copyright holder notifies you of the violation by some reasonable means, this is the first time you have received notice of violation of this License (for any work) from that copyright holder, and you cure the violation prior to 30 days after your receipt of the notice.

Termination of your rights under this section does not terminate the licenses of parties who have received copies or rights from you under this License. If your rights have been terminated and not permanently reinstated, receipt of a copy of some or all of the same material does not give you any rights to use it. 10. FUTURE REVISIONS OF THIS LICENSE

The Free Software Foundation may publish new, revised versions of the GNU Free Documentation License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns. See <http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/>.

Each version of the License is given a distinguishing version number. If the Document specifies that a particular numbered version of this License "or any later version" applies to it, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that specified version or of any later version that has been published (not as a draft) by the Free Software Foundation. If the Document does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published (not as a draft) by the Free Software Foundation. If the Document specifies that a proxy can decide which future versions of

this License can be used, that proxy's public statement of acceptance of a version permanently authorizes you to choose that version for the Document. 11. RELICENSING

"Massive Multiauthor Collaboration Site" (or "MMC Site") means any World Wide Web server that publishes copyrightable works and also provides prominent facilities for anybody to edit those works. A public wiki that anybody can edit is an example of such a server. A "Massive Multiauthor Collaboration" (or "MMC") contained in the site means any set of copyrightable works thus published on the MMC site.

"CC-BY-SA" means the Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 license published by Creative Commons Corporation, a not-for-profit corporation with a principal place of business in San Francisco, California, as well as future copyleft versions of that license published by that same organization.

"Incorporate" means to publish or republish a Document, in whole or in part, as part of another Document.

An MMC is "eligible for relicensing" if it is licensed under this License, and if all works that were first published under this License somewhere other than this MMC, and subsequently incorporated in whole or in part into the MMC, (1) had no cover texts or invariant sections, and (2) were thus incorporated prior to November 1, 2008.

The operator of an MMC Site may republish an MMC contained in the site under CC-BY-SA on the same site at any time before August 1, 2009, provided the MMC is eligible for relicensing. ADDENDUM: How to use this License for your documents

To use this License in a document you have written, include a copy of the License in the document and put the following copyright and license notices just after the title page:

Copyright (C) YEAR YOUR NAME. Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License, Version 1.3 or any later version published by the Free Software Foundation; with no Invariant Sections, no Front-Cover Texts, and no Back-Cover Texts. A copy of the license is included in the section entitled "GNU Free Documentation License".

If you have Invariant Sections, Front-Cover Texts and Back-Cover Texts, replace the "with ... Texts." line with this:

with the Invariant Sections being LIST THEIR TITLES, with the Front-Cover Texts being LIST, and with the Back-Cover Texts being LIST.

If you have Invariant Sections without Cover Texts, or some other combination of the three, merge those two alternatives to suit the situation.

If your document contains nontrivial examples of program code, we recommend releasing these examples in parallel under your choice of free software license, such as the GNU General Public License, to permit their use in free software.

## 63.3 GNU Lesser General Public License

### GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

Version 3, 29 June 2007

Copyright © 2007 Free Software Foundation, Inc. <<http://fsf.org/>>

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

This version of the GNU Lesser General Public License incorporates the terms and conditions of version 3 of the GNU General Public License, supplemented by the additional permissions listed below. 0. Additional Definitions.

As used herein, "this License" refers to version 3 of the GNU Lesser General Public License, and the "GNU GPL" refers to version 3 of the GNU General Public License.

"The Library" refers to a covered work governed by this license, other than an Application or a Combined Work as defined below.

An "Application" is any work that makes use of an interface provided by the Library, but which is not otherwise based on the Library. Defining a subclass of a class defined by the Library is deemed a mode of using an interface provided by the Library.

A "Combined Work" is a work produced by combining or linking an Application with the Library. The particular version of the Library with which the Combined Work was made is also called the "Linked Version".

The "Minimal Corresponding Source" for a Combined Work means the Corresponding Source for the Combined Work, excluding any source code for portions of the Combined Work that, considered in isolation, are based on the Application, and not on the Linked Version.

The "Corresponding Application Code" for a Combined Work means the object code and/or source code for the Application, including any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the Combined Work from the Application, but excluding the System Libraries of the Combined Work. 1. Exception to Section 3 of the GNU GPL.

You may convey a covered work under sections 3 and 4 of this License without being bound by section 3 of the GNU GPL. 2. Conveying Modified Versions.

If you modify a copy of the Library, and, in your modifications, a facility refers to a function or data to be supplied by an Application that uses the facility (other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked), then you may convey a copy of the modified version:

\* a) under this License, provided that you make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an Application does not supply the function or data, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful, or \* b) under the GNU GPL, with none of the additional permissions of this License applicable to that copy.

3. Object Code Incorporating Material from Library Header Files.

The object code form of an Application may incorporate material from a header file that is part of the Library. You may convey such object code under terms of your choice, provided that, if the incorporated material is not limited to numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, or small macros, inline functions and templates (ten or fewer lines in length), you do both of the following:

\* a) Give prominent notice with each copy of the object code that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. \* b) Accompany the object code with a copy of the GNU GPL and this license document.

### 4. Combined Works.

You may convey a Combined Work under terms of your choice that, taken together, effectively do not restrict modification of the portions of the Library contained in the Combined Work and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications, if you also do each of the following:

\* a) Give prominent notice with each copy of the Combined Work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. \* b) Accompany the Combined Work with a copy of the GNU GPL and this license document. \* c) For a Combined Work that displays copyright notices during execution, include the copyright notice for the Library among these notices, as well as a reference directing the user to the copies of the GNU GPL and this license document. \* d) Do one of the following: o 0) Convey the Minimal Corresponding Source under the terms of this License, and the Corresponding Application Code in a form suitable for, and under terms that permit, the user to recombine or relink the Application with a modified version of the Linked Version to produce a modified Combined Work, in the manner specified by section 6 of the GNU GPL for conveying Corresponding Source. o 1) Use a suitable shared library mechanism for linking with the Library. A suitable mechanism is one that (a) uses at run time a copy of the Library already present on the user's computer system, and (b) will operate properly with a modified version of the Library that is interface-compatible with the Linked Version. \* e) Provide Installation Information, but only if you would otherwise be required to provide such information under section 6 of the GNU GPL, and only to the extent that such information is necessary to install and execute a modified version of the Combined Work produced by recombining or relinking the Application with a modified version of the Linked Version. (If you use option 4d0, the Installation Information must accompany the Minimal Corresponding Source and Corresponding Application Code. If you use option 4d1, you must provide the Installation Information in the manner specified by section 6 of the GNU GPL for conveying Corresponding Source.)